

CAMBRIDGE LATIN COURSE

Book II



Fourth Edition

Cambridge Latin Course

Book II

FOURTH EDITION



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contents

Cambridge Latin Course

Book II

FOURTH EDITION

- Stage 15
- Stage 16
- Stage 17 Alexandria
- Stage 18 Eutychus et Clémens
- Stage 19 Isis
- Stage 20 medicus

Language information



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Shaftesbury Road, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
100 Brook Hill Drive, West Nyack, NY 10994-2133, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
First published 1971
Second edition 1983
Integrated edition 1997
Fourth edition 2000
Fifth printing 2004

ISBN 0 521 64168 2 paperback

Thanks are due to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:
p. 1. Gaius Suetonius Tranquillus, *De Vita Illustrium Virorum*, p. 17. Cambridge University Press; p. 2. by permission of the
National Museum of Wales, p. 10. p. 38. St Albans Museum, p. 17. p. 18. p. 19. p. 23. p. 24. p. 25. p. 26. p. 27. p. 28. p. 29. p. 30. p. 31. p. 32. p. 33. p. 34. p. 35. p. 36. p. 37. p. 38. p. 39. p. 40. p. 41. p. 42. p. 43. p. 44. p. 45. p. 46. p. 47. p. 48. p. 49. p. 50. p. 51. p. 52. p. 53. p. 54. p. 55. p. 56. p. 57. p. 58. p. 59. p. 60. p. 61. p. 62. p. 63. p. 64. p. 65. p. 66. p. 67. p. 68. p. 69. p. 70. p. 71. p. 72. p. 73. p. 74. p. 75. p. 76. p. 77. p. 78. p. 79. p. 80. p. 81. p. 82. p. 83. p. 84. p. 85. p. 86. p. 87. p. 88. p. 89. p. 90. p. 91. p. 92. p. 93. p. 94. p. 95. p. 96. p. 97. p. 98. p. 99. p. 100. p. 101. p. 102. p. 103. p. 104. p. 105. p. 106. p. 107. p. 108. p. 109. p. 110. p. 111. p. 112. p. 113. p. 114. p. 115. p. 116. p. 117. p. 118. p. 119. p. 120. p. 121. p. 122. p. 123. p. 124. p. 125. p. 126. p. 127. p. 128. p. 129. p. 130. p. 131. p. 132. p. 133. p. 134. p. 135. p. 136. p. 137. p. 138. p. 139. p. 140. p. 141. p. 142. p. 143. p. 144. p. 145. p. 146. p. 147. p. 148. p. 149. p. 150. p. 151. p. 152. p. 153. p. 154. p. 155. p. 156. p. 157. p. 158. p. 159. p. 160. p. 161. p. 162. p. 163. p. 164. p. 165. p. 166. p. 167. p. 168. p. 169. p. 170. p. 171. p. 172. p. 173. p. 174. p. 175. p. 176. p. 177. p. 178. p. 179. p. 180. p. 181. p. 182. p. 183. p. 184. p. 185. p. 186. p. 187. p. 188. p. 189. p. 190. p. 191. p. 192. p. 193. p. 194. p. 195. p. 196. p. 197. p. 198. p. 199. p. 200. p. 201. p. 202. p. 203. p. 204. p. 205. p. 206. p. 207. p. 208. p. 209. p. 210. p. 211. p. 212. p. 213. p. 214. p. 215. p. 216. p. 217. p. 218. p. 219. p. 220. p. 221. p. 222. p. 223. p. 224. p. 225. p. 226. p. 227. p. 228. p. 229. p. 230. p. 231. p. 232. p. 233. p. 234. p. 235. p. 236. p. 237. p. 238. p. 239. p. 240. p. 241. p. 242. p. 243. p. 244. p. 245. p. 246. p. 247. p. 248. p. 249. p. 250. p. 251. p. 252. p. 253. p. 254. p. 255. p. 256. p. 257. p. 258. p. 259. p. 260. p. 261. p. 262. p. 263. p. 264. p. 265. p. 266. p. 267. p. 268. p. 269. p. 270. p. 271. p. 272. p. 273. p. 274. p. 275. p. 276. p. 277. p. 278. p. 279. p. 280. p. 281. p. 282. p. 283. p. 284. p. 285. p. 286. p. 287. p. 288. p. 289. p. 290. p. 291. p. 292. p. 293. p. 294. p. 295. p. 296. p. 297. p. 298. p. 299. p. 300. p. 301. p. 302. p. 303. p. 304. p. 305. p. 306. p. 307. p. 308. p. 309. p. 310. p. 311. p. 312. p. 313. p. 314. p. 315. p. 316. p. 317. p. 318. p. 319. p. 320. p. 321. p. 322. p. 323. p. 324. p. 325. p. 326. p. 327. p. 328. p. 329. p. 330. p. 331. p. 332. p. 333. p. 334. p. 335. p. 336. p. 337. p. 338. p. 339. p. 340. p. 341. p. 342. p. 343. p. 344. p. 345. p. 346. p. 347. p. 348. p. 349. p. 350. p. 351. p. 352. p. 353. p. 354. p. 355. p. 356. p. 357. p. 358. p. 359. p. 360. p. 361. p. 362. p. 363. p. 364. p. 365. p. 366. p. 367. p. 368. p. 369. p. 370. p. 371. p. 372. p. 373. p. 374. p. 375. p. 376. p. 377. p. 378. p. 379. p. 380. p. 381. p. 382. p. 383. p. 384. p. 385. p. 386. p. 387. p. 388. p. 389. p. 390. p. 391. p. 392. p. 393. p. 394. p. 395. p. 396. p. 397. p. 398. p. 399. p. 400. p. 401. p. 402. p. 403. p. 404. p. 405. p. 406. p. 407. p. 408. p. 409. p. 410. p. 411. p. 412. p. 413. p. 414. p. 415. p. 416. p. 417. p. 418. p. 419. p. 420. p. 421. p. 422. p. 423. p. 424. p. 425. p. 426. p. 427. p. 428. p. 429. p. 430. p. 431. p. 432. p. 433. p. 434. p. 435. p. 436. p. 437. p. 438. p. 439. p. 440. p. 441. p. 442. p. 443. p. 444. p. 445. p. 446. p. 447. p. 448. p. 449. p. 450. p. 451. p. 452. p. 453. p. 454. p. 455. p. 456. p. 457. p. 458. p. 459. p. 460. p. 461. p. 462. p. 463. p. 464. p. 465. p. 466. p. 467. p. 468. p. 469. p. 470. p. 471. p. 472. p. 473. p. 474. p. 475. p. 476. p. 477. p. 478. p. 479. p. 480. p. 481. p. 482. p. 483. p. 484. p. 485. p. 486. p. 487. p. 488. p. 489. p. 490. p. 491. p. 492. p. 493. p. 494. p. 495. p. 496. p. 497. p. 498. p. 499. p. 500. p. 501. p. 502. p. 503. p. 504. p. 505. p. 506. p. 507. p. 508. p. 509. p. 510. p. 511. p. 512. p. 513. p. 514. p. 515. p. 516. p. 517. p. 518. p. 519. p. 520. p. 521. p. 522. p. 523. p. 524. p. 525. p. 526. p. 527. p. 528. p. 529. p. 530. p. 531. p. 532. p. 533. p. 534. p. 535. p. 536. p. 537. p. 538. p. 539. p. 540. p. 541. p. 542. p. 543. p. 544. p. 545. p. 546. p. 547. p. 548. p. 549. p. 550. p. 551. p. 552. p. 553. p. 554. p. 555. p. 556. p. 557. p. 558. p. 559. p. 560. p. 561. p. 562. p. 563. p. 564. p. 565. p. 566. p. 567. p. 568. p. 569. p. 570. p. 571. p. 572. p. 573. p. 574. p. 575. p. 576. p. 577. p. 578. p. 579. p. 580. p. 581. p. 582. p. 583. p. 584. p. 585. p. 586. p. 587. p. 588. p. 589. p. 590. p. 591. p. 592. p. 593. p. 594. p. 595. p. 596. p. 597. p. 598. p. 599. p. 600. p. 601. p. 602. p. 603. p. 604. p. 605. p. 606. p. 607. p. 608. p. 609. p. 610. p. 611. p. 612. p. 613. p. 614. p. 615. p. 616. p. 617. p. 618. p. 619. p. 620. p. 621. p. 622. p. 623. p. 624. p. 625. p. 626. p. 627. p. 628. p. 629. p. 630. p. 631. p. 632. p. 633. p. 634. p. 635. p. 636. p. 637. p. 638. p. 639. p. 640. p. 641. p. 642. p. 643. p. 644. p. 645. p. 646. p. 647. p. 648. p. 649. p. 650. p. 651. p. 652. p. 653. p. 654. p. 655. p. 656. p. 657. p. 658. p. 659. p. 660. p. 661. p. 662. p. 663. p. 664. p. 665. p. 666. p. 667. p. 668. p. 669. p. 670. p. 671. p. 672. p. 673. p. 674. p. 675. p. 676. p. 677. p. 678. p. 679. p. 680. p. 681. p. 682. p. 683. p. 684. p. 685. p. 686. p. 687. p. 688. p. 689. p. 690. p. 691. p. 692. p. 693. p. 694. p. 695. p. 696. p. 697. p. 698. p. 699. p. 700. p. 701. p. 702. p. 703. p. 704. p. 705. p. 706. p. 707. p. 708. p. 709. p. 710. p. 711. p. 712. p. 713. p. 714. p. 715. p. 716. p. 717. p. 718. p. 719. p. 720. p. 721. p. 722. p. 723. p. 724. p. 725. p. 726. p. 727. p. 728. p. 729. p. 730. p. 731. p. 732. p. 733. p. 734. p. 735. p. 736. p. 737. p. 738. p. 739. p. 740. p. 741. p. 742. p. 743. p. 744. p. 745. p. 746. p. 747. p. 748. p. 749. p. 750. p. 751. p. 752. p. 753. p. 754. p. 755. p. 756. p. 757. p. 758. p. 759. p. 760. p. 761. p. 762. p. 763. p. 764. p. 765. p. 766. p. 767. p. 768. p. 769. p. 770. p. 771. p. 772. p. 773. p. 774. p. 775. p. 776. p. 777. p. 778. p. 779. p. 780. p. 781. p. 782. p. 783. p. 784. p. 785. p. 786. p. 787. p. 788. p. 789. p. 790. p. 791. p. 792. p. 793. p. 794. p. 795. p. 796. p. 797. p. 798. p. 799. p. 800. p. 801. p. 802. p. 803. p. 804. p. 805. p. 806. p. 807. p. 808. p. 809. p. 810. p. 811. p. 812. p. 813. p. 814. p. 815. p. 816. p. 817. p. 818. p. 819. p. 820. p. 821. p. 822. p. 823. p. 824. p. 825. p. 826. p. 827. p. 828. p. 829. p. 830. p. 831. p. 832. p. 833. p. 834. p. 835. p. 836. p. 837. p. 838. p. 839. p. 840. p. 841. p. 842. p. 843. p. 844. p. 845. p. 846. p. 847. p. 848. p. 849. p. 850. p. 851. p. 852. p. 853. p. 854. p. 855. p. 856. p. 857. p. 858. p. 859. p. 860. p. 861. p. 862. p. 863. p. 864. p. 865. p. 866. p. 867. p. 868. p. 869. p. 870. p. 871. p. 872. p. 873. p. 874. p. 875. p. 876. p. 877. p. 878. p. 879. p. 880. p. 881. p. 882. p. 883. p. 884. p. 885. p. 886. p. 887. p. 888. p. 889. p. 890. p. 891. p. 892. p. 893. p. 894. p. 895. p. 896. p. 897. p. 898. p. 899. p. 900. p. 901. p. 902. p. 903. p. 904. p. 905. p. 906. p. 907. p. 908. p. 909. p. 910. p. 911. p. 912. p. 913. p. 914. p. 915. p. 916. p. 917. p. 918. p. 919. p. 920. p. 921. p. 922. p. 923. p. 924. p. 925. p. 926. p. 927. p. 928. p. 929. p. 930. p. 931. p. 932. p. 933. p. 934. p. 935. p. 936. p. 937. p. 938. p. 939. p. 940. p. 941. p. 942. p. 943. p. 944. p. 945. p. 946. p. 947. p. 948. p. 949. p. 950. p. 951. p. 952. p. 953. p. 954. p. 955. p. 956. p. 957. p. 958. p. 959. p. 960. p. 961. p. 962. p. 963. p. 964. p. 965. p. 966. p. 967. p. 968. p. 969. p. 970. p. 971. p. 972. p. 973. p. 974. p. 975. p. 976. p. 977. p. 978. p. 979. p. 980. p. 981. p. 982. p. 983. p. 984. p. 985. p. 986. p. 987. p. 988. p. 989. p. 990. p. 991. p. 992. p. 993. p. 994. p. 995. p. 996. p. 997. p. 998. p. 999. p. 1000.

Every effort has been made to reach copyright holders. The publisher would be glad to hear from anyone whose rights they have unknowingly infringed.

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS
The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge CB2 2RU, UK
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

<http://www.cambridge.org>

This book, an outcome of work jointly commissioned by the Schools Council before its closure and the Cambridge School Classics Project, is published under the aegis of Qualifications and Curriculum Authority Enterprises Limited, Newcombe House, 45 Notting Hill Gate, London W11 3JB.

© University of Cambridge School Latin project 2002

This book is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 1971
Second edition 1982
Integrated edition 1990
Fourth edition 2000
Eighth printing 2004

Printed in Italy by G. Canale & C. S.p.A.

Typeface *MacraPalatino12* System *Macintosh* QuarkXPress®

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 521 64468 2 paperback

Cover photographs: front: cat © British Museum; mosaic © Roger Dalladay; back © Roger Dalladay
Maps and plans by Neil Stanton / Eikon Illustration
Illustrations by Joy Mellor and Leslie Jones

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

Thanks are due to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:
p. 1, Grahame Soffe; p. 5 *l*, p. 17 *r*, Cambridge University Museum of Archaeology and Anthropology; p. 5 *r*, by permission of the National Museum of Wales; p. 10 *l*, p. 38, St Albans Museums; p. 17 *l*, p. 18 *br*, p. 19 *b*/p. 23 *r* 2nd from *t*, p. 23 *br*, p. 25, p. 46 *tr*, *cr*, p. 48 *l*, p. 49, p. 91, p. 96 *l*, p. 99 *c*, p. 108 *l*, p. 119 *all*, p. 133, p. 134 *tl*, p. 137/p. 157 *l*, p. 155 *c*, p. 161/p. 176 *t*, p. 172, p. 175, p. 176 *b*, p. 178, p. 179 *tr*, *br*, © The British Museum; p. 17 *c*, p. 26, Institute of Archaeology, University of Oxford; p. 20, p. 50, Colchester Museums; p. 21, Cambridge University Committee for Aerial Photography; p. 23 *r* 2nd from *b*/p. 84, p. 71, p. 76, p. 83, p. 85 *tc*, *bl*, p. 86 *cr*, *b*, p. 87 *r*, p. 90, Fishbourne Roman Palace/Sussex Archaeological Society; p. 27, p. 33, p. 179 *l*, Courtesy of the Museum of London; p. 45 *t*, Dr Simon James; p. 45 *c*, *b*, © Estate of Alan Sorrell/English Heritage Photographic Library; p. 46 *b*, Dr PJ Reynolds/Butser Ancient Farm; p. 48 *r*, Courtesy of the Yorkshire Museum; p. 65, Bob Croxford/Atmosphere; p. 68 *t*, *br*, Francesca Radcliffe; p. 68 *bl*, Society of Antiquaries of London; p. 69, The Saxifrage Society; p. 70, Dorset County Museum; p. 79, John Deakin; p. 99 *r*, p. 140 *l*, Don Flear; p. 101, p. 107, *b*, p. 110 *t*, *bl*, Stéphane Compoin/Corbis Sygma; p. 103, © IFAO/Alain Lecler; p. 104, p. 107 *tl*, *tr*, Jean-Claude Golvin, *Le Phare d'Alexandrie*, coll. Découvertes Gallimard, © Editions Gallimard Jeunesse; p. 108 *r*, GoJourney.com; p. 109, Copyright © 1980 by Carl Sagan Productions, Inc.; p. 112, Centre d'Etudes Alexandrines; p. 115 *r*, © Photo RMN/Richard Lambert; p. 123, p. 127 *b*, p. 128, p. 129, p. 130 *l*, p. 131 *t*, The Corning Museum of Glass, Corning, NY; p. 134 *br*, The National Gallery, London; p. 141, Württembergisches Landesmuseum, Stuttgart; p. 153, p. 158 *tr*, Rex Features Limited; p. 155 *br*, Michael Holford; p. 158 *tl*, The Metropolitan Museum of Art, Gift of Edward S. Harkness, 1917 (17.9.1) Photograph © 1992 The Metropolitan Museum of Art; p. 158 *b*, Scala; p. 180, © Photo RMN/H Lewandowski/Musée du Louvre.

Other photography by Roger Dalladay. Thanks are due to the following for permission to reproduce photographs:
p. 6, Dr Gerald Brodribb/Beauport Park; p. 10 *r*, p. 140 *r*, p. 169, Bardo Museum, Tunis; p. 18 *l*/p. 23 *tr*, p. 18 *tr*/p. 23 *tl*, p. 23 *bl*/p. 68 *inset*, p. 85 *tr*, p. 111, p. 132 *bl*, p. 150, p. 151, p. 154 *l*, p. 156, p. 157 *r*, p. 183, Museo Archeologico Nazionale, Naples; p. 19 *r*, Musei Capitolini, Rome; p. 22 *br*, p. 37, p. 41, p. 99 *l*, p. 105, p. 115 *l*, p. 127 *t*, p. 130 *r*, p. 134 *b* 2nd from *r*, p. 154 *r*, p. 155 *bl*, The British Museum; p. 31, p. 67 *r*, p. 74, Rheinisches Landesmuseum, Trier; p. 67 *l*, Sousse Museum; p. 77, Villa Romana del Casale, Piazza Armerina; p. 85 *tl*, *br*, p. 86 *tl*, *tr*, *cl*, *b*, p. 87 *l*, p. 88 *all*, Fishbourne Roman Palace/Sussex Archaeological Society; p. 118, p. 136, Museo Nazionale Romano, Rome; p. 134 *t* 2nd from *l*, *t* 2nd from *r*, *tr*, Musée du Louvre, Paris; p. 134 *b* 2nd from *l*, Pushkin Museum, Moscow; p. 146, National Archaeological Museum of Sperlonga; p. 164, Monumenti Musei e Gallerie Pontificie, Vatican City.

Every effort has been made to reach copyright holders. The publishers would be glad to hear from anyone whose rights they have unknowingly infringed.

Contents

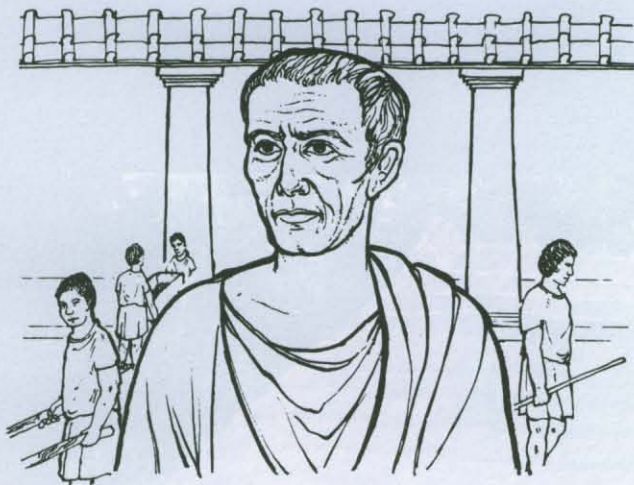
Stage 13	in Britannia	page 1
Stage 14	apud Salviu	23
Stage 15	rēx Cogidubnus	43
Stage 16	in aulā	59
Stage 17	Alexandria	75
Stage 18	Eutyclus et Clēmēns	93
Stage 19	Īsis	111
Stage 20	medicus	131
Language information		147
Part One: About the language		150
Part Two: Vocabulary		170

IN BRITANNIA



IN BRITANNIA

STAGE 13



- 1 hic vir est Gāius Salvius Līberālis.
Salvius in villā magnificā habitat.
villa est in Britannīā.
Salvius multōs servōs habet.



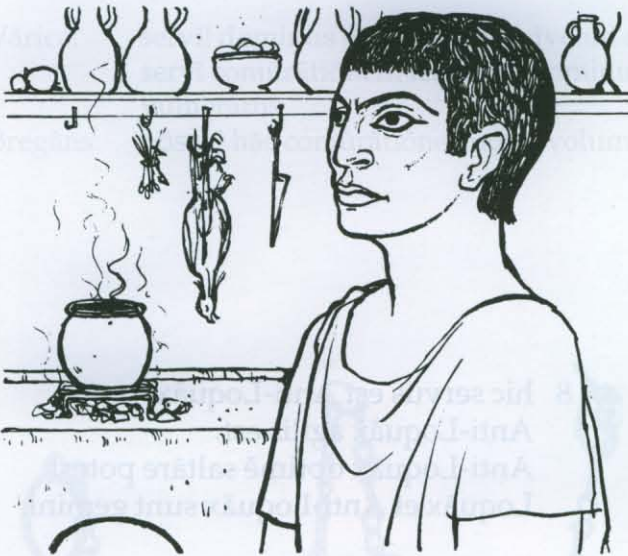
- 2 uxor est Rūfilla.
Rūfilla multās ancillās habet.
ancillae in villā labōrant.



- 3 hic servus est Vārica.
Vārica est vilicus.
vilicus villam et servōs cūrat.



- 4 hic servus est Philus.
Philus callidus est.
Philus numerāre potest.



- 5 hic servus est Volūbilis.
Volūbilis coquus optimus est.
Volūbilis cēnam optimam coquere
potest.



- 6 hic servus est Bregāns.
Bregāns nōn callidus est. Bregāns
numerāre nōn potest.
Bregāns fessus est.
Bregāns dormire vult.



- 7 hic servus est Loquāx.
Loquāx vōcem suāvem habet.
Loquāx suāviter cantāre potest.



- 8 hic servus est Anti-Loquāx.
Anti-Loquāx agilis est.
Anti-Loquāx optimē saltāre potest.
Loquāx et Anti-Loquāx sunt geminī.



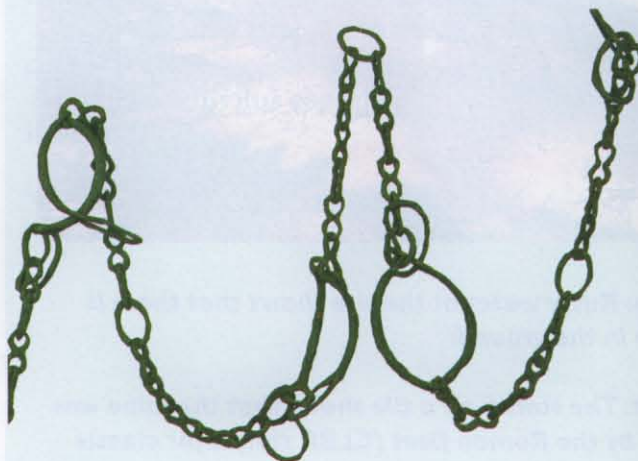
- 9 Salvius multōs servōs habet. servī
labōrant.
servī ignāvī et fessī sunt.
servī labōrāre nōlunt.

trēs servī

trēs servī in vīllā labōrant. haec vīlla est in Britannīā. servī dīlīgenter labōrant, quod dominum exspectant. servī vītā suā dēplōrant.

- Philus: (pecūniam numerat.) iterum pluit! semper pluit! nōs sōlem numquam vidēmus. ego ad Ītaliā redīre volō. ego sōlem vidēre volō.
- Volūbilis: (cēnam in culinā parat.) ubi est vīnum? nūllum vīnum videō. quis hausit? ego aquam bibere nōn possum! aqua est foeda!
- Bregāns: (pavīmentum lavat.) ego labōrāre nōlō! fessus sum. multum vīnum bibī. ego dormīre volō.
- (Vārica subitō vīllam intrat. Vārica est vīlicus.)
- Vārica: servī! dominus noster irātus advenit! apud Canticōs servī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. dominus est vulnerātus.
- Bregāns: nōs dē hāc coniūrātiōne audīre volumus. rem nārrā!

Britanniā: Britannia Britain
dēplōrant: dēplōrāre complain
about
pluit it is raining
sōlem: sōl sun
Ītaliā: Ītalia Italy
redīre volō I want to return
aquam: aqua water
bibere nōn possum I cannot
drink
foeda foul, filthy
pavīmentum floor
lavat: lavāre wash
labōrāre nōlō I do not want to
work
fessus tired
advenit: advenīre arrive
apud Canticōs among the
Cantici
coniūrātiōnem: coniūrātiō
plot
vulnerātus wounded



Sometimes slaves were kept in chains. Here is a neck-chain for slaves which was found in East Anglia.



A neck-chain from Wales being worn by volunteers.

Clues to a Roman mine

Salvius had visited the Cantici to inspect an iron mine. The site of one of these mines has been found near Hastings.



Quantities of slag (waste from extracting the iron) have been found at the site. In the 19th century 100,000 tonnes of it were removed from the site and used for road building.



Top: Rusty water at the site shows that there is iron in the ground.



Left: The stamp on a tile shows that the mine was run by the Roman fleet (CLBR stands for classis Britannica).

coniūratiō

Vārica rem nārrāvit:

‘nōs apud Canticōs erāmus, quod Salvius metallum novum vīsītābat. hospes erat Pompēius Optātus, vir benignus. in metallō labōrābant multī servī. quamquam servī multum ferrum ē terrā effodiēbant, Salvius nōn erat contentus. Salvius servōs ad sē vocāvit et inspexit. ūnus servus aeger erat. Salvius servum aegrum ē turbā trāxit et clāmāvit,

“servus aeger est inūtilis. ego servōs inūtilēs retinēre nōlō.” postquam hoc dīxit, Salvius carnificibus servum trādīdit. carnificēs eum statim interfēcērunt.

hic servus tamen filiū habēbat; nōmen erat Alātor. Alātor patrem suū vindicāre voluit. itaque, ubi cēterī dormiēbant, Alātor pugiōnem cēpit. postquam custōdēs ēlūsit, cubiculum intrāvit. in hōc cubiculō Salvius dormiēbat. tum Alātor dominum nostrum petīvit et vulnerāvit. dominus noster erat perterritus; manūs ad servum extendit et veniam petīvit. custōdēs tamen sonōs audīvērunt. in cubiculum ruērunt et Alātōrem interfēcērunt. tum Salvius saeviēbat. statim Pompēium excitāvit et irātus clāmāvit,

“servus mē vulnerāvit! coniūratiō est! omnēs servī sunt cōnsciī. ego omnibus supplicium poscō!”

Pompēius, postquam hoc audīvit, erat attonitus.

“ego omnēs servōs interficere nōn possum. ūnus tē vulnerāvit. ūnus igitur est nocēns, cēterī innocentēs.”

“custōdēs nōn sunt innocentēs”, inquit Salvius. “cum Alātōre coniūrābant.”

Pompēius invītus cōnsēnsit et carnificibus omnēs custōdēs trādīdit.

metallum a mine

hospes host

quamquam although

ferrum iron

effodiēbant: effodere dig

ad sē to him

inūtilis useless

carnificibus: carnifex

executioner

nōmen name

vindicāre voluit

wanted to avenge

itaque and so

ubi when

cēterī the others

pugiōnem: pugiō dagger

custōdēs: custōs guard

ēlūsit: ēlūdere slip past

manūs ... extendit stretched

out his hands

veniam petīvit

begged for mercy

saeviēbat: saevire be in a rage

cōnsciī: cōnsciūs accomplice

supplicium death penalty

poscō: poscere demand

nocēns guilty

innocentēs: innocēns innocent

coniūrābant: coniūrāre plot

invītus unwilling, reluctant

Bregāns

When you have read this story, answer the questions on page 9.

tum Vārica, postquam hanc rem nārrāvit, clāmāvit,

'Loquāx! Anti-Loquāx! dominus advenit. vocāte servōs in āream! ego eōs īnspicere volō.'

servī ad āream celeriter cucurrērunt, quod Salvium timēbant.

servī in ōrdinēs longōs sē īnstrūxērunt. vīlicus per ōrdinēs ambulābat; servōs īnspiciēbat et numerābat. subitō exclāmāvit,

'ubi sunt ancillae? nūllās ancillās videō.'

'ancillae dominō nostrō cubiculum parant', respondit Loquāx.

'ubi est Volūbilis noster?' inquit Vārica. 'ego Volūbilem vidēre nōn possum.'

'Volūbilis venīre nōn potest, quod cēnam parat', respondit Anti-Loquāx.

Bregāns in mediīs servīs stābat; canem ingentem sēcum habēbat.

'ecce, Vārica! rēx Cogidubnus dominō nostrō hunc canem mīsit', inquit Bregāns. 'canis ferōcissimus est; bēstiās optimē agitāre potest.'

subitō vīginti equitēs āream intrāvērunt. p̄rimus erat Salvius. postquam ex equō dēscendit, Vāricam salūtāvit.

'servōs īnspicere volō', inquit Salvius. tum Salvius et Vārica per ōrdinēs ambulābant.

puerī puellaeque in p̄rimō ōrdine stābant et dominum suum salūtābant. cum puerīs stābant geminī.

'salvē, domine!' inquit Loquāx.

'salvē, domine!' inquit Anti-Loquāx.

Bregāns, simulac Salvium vīdit, 'domine! domine!' clāmāvit.

Salvius servō nihil respondit. Bregāns iterum clāmāvit,

'Salvī! Salvī! spectā canem!'

Salvius saeviēbat, quod servus erat īnsolēns.

'servus īnsolentissimus es', inquit Salvius. Bregāntem ferōciter pulsāvit. Bregāns ad terram dēcidit. canis statim ex ōrdine ērūpit, et Salvium petīvit. nōnnūllī servī ex ōrdinibus ērūpērunt canemque retrāxērunt. Salvius, postquam sē recēpit, gladium dēstrīnxit.

'istum canem interficere volō', inquit Salvius.

'illud difficile est', inquit Bregāns. 'rēx Cogidubnus, amīcus tuus, tibi canem dedit.'

'ita vērō, difficile est', respondit Salvius. 'sed ego tē pūnīre possum. illud facile est, quod servus meus es.'

in āream into the courtyard

5 in ōrdinēs in rows
sē īnstrūxērunt: sē īnstruere
draw oneself up
per ōrdinēs along the rows

10 sēcum with him

rēx king

equitēs: eques horseman

15 equō: equus horse

puerī puellaeque
the boys and girls
geminī twins

25 simulac as soon as

īnsolēns rude, insolent

ērūpit: ērumpere break
away

nōnnūllī some, several
retrāxērunt: retrahere
drag back

35 sē recēpit: sē recipere
recover

illud that

pūnīre punish
facile easy

Questions

Marks

- 1 Why did Varica want to inspect the slaves? What did he tell the twins to do (lines 2–3)? 2
- 2 In line 4 which two Latin words show that the slaves were in a hurry? Why did they hurry? 2
- 3 In lines 8–12 why were the slave-girls and Volubilis missing from the inspection? 2
- 4 **canem ingentem sēcum habēbat** (lines 13–14). How did Bregans come to have the dog with him? What did he say about the dog (lines 15–17)? 1 + 2
- 5 Salvius is an important Roman official. How do lines 18–19 show this? Give two details. 2
- 6 How did Salvius react in lines 27 and 29 when Bregans called out to him? Why do you think Salvius called Bregans **īnsolentissimus** (line 30)? 2 + 1
- 7 What happened to Bregans after Salvius hit him? 1
- 8 How did the dog nearly cause a disaster (lines 31–2)? 2
- 9 Who saved the situation? What did they do? 1 + 2
- 10 **Salvius...gladium dēstrīnxit** (lines 33–4). What did Salvius want to do? Why did he change his mind? 2
- 11 **ego tē pūnīre possum** (lines 38–9). Did Bregans deserve to be punished? Give a reason. 1
- 12 Which two words from this list do you think best describe Bregans in this story: brave, stupid, impetuous, cheeky? Give reasons for your choice. 2

TOTAL 25



About the language 1: infinitives

1 Study the following pairs of sentences:

Loquāx cantat.
Loquax is singing.

Loquāx **cantāre** vult.
Loquax wants to sing.

servī dominum vident.
The slaves see the master.

servī dominum **vidēre** nōlunt.
The slaves do not want to see the master.

puerī currunt.
The boys are running.

puerī celeriter **currere** possunt.
The boys are able to run quickly.

Salvius Bregantem pūnit.
Salvius punishes Bregans.

Salvius Bregantem **pūnīre** potest.
Salvius is able to punish Bregans.

The form of the verb in bold type is known as the **infinitive**. It usually ends in **-re** and means 'to do (something)'.

2 Translate the following examples and write down the Latin infinitive in each sentence:

- a Anti-Loquāx currit. Anti-Loquāx currere potest.
- b Bregāns labōrat. Bregāns labōrāre nōn vult.
- c geminī fābulam audīre volunt.
- d senēs festināre nōn possunt.

3 The verbs **volō**, **nōlō** and **possum** are often used with an infinitive. They form their present tense as follows:

(ego) volō	<i>I want</i>	(ego) nōlō	<i>I do not want</i>
(tū) vīs	<i>you (singular) want</i>	(tū) nōn vīs	<i>you (singular) do not want</i>
vult	<i>s/he wants</i>		<i>want</i>
(nōs) volumus	<i>we want</i>	nōn vult	<i>s/he does not want</i>
(vōs) vultis	<i>you (plural) want</i>	(nōs) nōlumus	<i>we do not want</i>
volunt	<i>they want</i>	(vōs) nōn vultis	<i>you (plural) do not want</i>
		nōlunt	<i>they do not want</i>
(ego) possum	<i>I am able</i>		
(tū) potes	<i>you (singular) are able</i>		
potest	<i>s/he is able</i>		
(nōs) possumus	<i>we are able</i>		
(vōs) potestis	<i>you (plural) are able</i>		
possunt	<i>they are able</i>		

4 **possum, potes**, etc. can also be translated as 'I can, you can', etc.:

nōs dormīre nōn possumus.
ego leōnem interficere possum.

*We are not able to sleep or We cannot sleep.
I am able to kill the lion or I can kill the lion.*

5 Further examples:

- a ego pugnāre possum.
- b nōs effugere nōn possumus.
- c tū labōrāre nōn vīs.
- d coquus cēnam optimam parāre potest.
- e celeriter currere potestis.
- f in villā manēre nōlō.
- g labōrāre nōlunt.
- h vīnum bibere volumus.



British hunting dogs were prized all over the world. One is shown here on a Romano-British cup made near Peterborough.

Salvius fundum inspicit

postrīdiē Salvius fundum inspīcere voluit. Vārica igitur eum per fundum dūxit. vīlicus dominō agrōs et segetem ostendit.

'seges est optima, domine', inquit Vārica. 'servī multum frūmentum in horreum iam intulērunt.'

Salvius, postquam agrōs circumspēctāvit, Vāricae dīxit, 'ubi sunt arātōrēs et magister? nōne Cervīx arātōribus praeest?'

'ita vērō, domine!' respondit Vārica. 'sed arātōrēs hodiē nōn labōrant, quod Cervīx abest. aeger est.'

Salvius eī respondit, 'quid dīxistī? aeger est? ego servum aegrum retinēre nōlō.'

'sed Cervīx perītissimus est', exclāmāvit vīlicus. 'Cervīx sōlus rem rūsticam cūrāre potest.'

'tacē!' inquit Salvius. 'eum vēndere volō.'

simulatque hoc dīxit, duōs servōs vīdit. servī ad horreum festīnābant.

'quid faciunt hī servī?' rogāvit Salvius.

'hī servī arātōribus cibum ferunt, domine. placetne tibi?' respondit Vārica.

'mihi nōn placet!' inquit Salvius. 'ego servīs ignāvīs nūllum cibum dō.'

tum dominus et vīlicus ad horreum advēnērunt. prope horreum Salvius aedificium vīdit. aedificium erat sēmirutum.

'quid est hoc aedificium?' inquit Salvius.

'horreum novum est, domine!' respondit vīlicus. 'alterum iam plēnum est. ego igitur horreum novum aedificāre voluī.'

'sed cūr sēmirutum est?' inquit Salvius.

Vārica respondit, 'ubi servī horreum aedificābant, domine, rēs dīra accidit. taurus, animal ferōx, impetum in hoc aedificium fēcit. mūrōs dēlēvit et servōs terruit.'

'quis taurum dūcēbat?' inquit Salvius. 'quis erat negligēs?'

'Bregāns!'

'ēheu!' inquit Salvius. 'ego Britannīs nōn crēdō. omnēs Britannī sunt stultī, sed iste Bregāns est stultior quam cēteri!'

agrōs: ager field
segetem: seges crop, harvest
frūmentum grain

5 horreum barn, granary
intulērunt: inferre bring in
arātōrēs: arātor ploughman
magister foreman
nōne? surely?

10 praeest: praeesse
be in charge of
eī to him

perītissimus: perītus skilful
sōlus alone, only
15 rem rūsticam the farming
cūrāre look after, supervise
simulatque as soon as
hī these

20 ferunt: ferre bring
ignāvīs: ignāvus lazy

aedificium building

25

dīra dreadful

30

taurus bull
animal animal
impetum: impetus attack
negligēs careless
Britannīs: Britannī Britons



This wall-painting from Roman Gaul shows a master coming to inspect his villa.

About the language 2: **-que**

- 1 In this Stage, you have met a new way of saying 'and' in Latin:

puerī puellae**que** *boys and girls*
dominus servī**que** *master and slaves*

Note that **-que** is added on to the end of the second word.

Rewrite the following examples using **-que** and translate them.

- a servī et ancillae
b agricolae et mercātōrēs

- 2 **-que** can also be used to link sentences together:

dominus ex equō dēscendit villam**que** intrāvit.
The master got off his horse and went into the house.

custōdēs in cubiculum ruērunt servum**que** interfēcērunt.
The guards rushed into the bedroom and killed the slave.

- 3 Further examples:

- a Vārica servōs ancillās**que** inspexit.
b Bregāns canis**que** in ōrdine stābant.
c Salvius āream intrāvit Vāricam**que** salūtāvit.
d Volūbilis ad culinam revēnit cibum**que** parāvit.
e taurus impetum fēcit mūrōs**que** dēlēvit.

Practising the language

- 1 Complete each sentence of this exercise with the most suitable infinitive from the box below. Then translate the whole sentence. Do not use any infinitive more than once.

inspicere	dormire
numerāre	labōrāre
manēre	bibere

- a Philus est callidus. Philus pecūniam potest.
b Loquāx et Anti-Loquāx sunt fessī. puerī volunt.
c Salvius est dominus. Salvius servōs et fundum vult.
d Cervix est aeger. Cervix nōn potest.
e Volūbilis laetus nōn est. Volūbilis aquam nōn vult.
f servī contentī nōn sunt. servī in villā nōlunt.
- 2 Complete each sentence with the right form of the noun. Then translate the sentence.
- a in fundō labōrābat. (agricola, agricolae)
b fūrem nōn vīdērunt. (custōs, custōdēs)
c epistulās longās scrībēbant. (servus, servī)
d cūr prope iānuam lātrābat? (canis, canēs)
e, quod multam pecūniam habēbat, villam magnificam aedificāvit. (senex, senēs)
f, postquam in forō convēnērunt, ad tabernam contendērunt. (amīcus, amīcī)



- 3 Fill in the gaps in this story with the most suitable verb from the box below, and then translate the whole story. Do not use any word more than once.

cōspexī	pulsāvī	vituperāvī	obdormīvī	fūgī
cōspexistī	pulsāvistī	vituperāvistī	obdormīvistī	fūgistī
cōspexit	pulsāvit	vituperāvit	obdormīvit	fūgit

servus in cubiculō labōrābat. servus, quod erat fessus, in cubiculō

.....

Salvius, postquam cubiculum intrāvit, servum; statim fūstem cēpit et servum

Rūfilla, quod clāmōrēs audīvit, in cubiculum ruit.

Rūfilla: tū es dominus pessimus! cūr tū servum

Salvius: ego servum, quod in cubiculō dormiēbat.

Rūfilla: heri tū ancillam meam, quod negligēns erat. ancilla perterrita erat, et ē villā

Salvius: in villā meā ego sum dominus. ego ancillam, quod ignāva erat.



Britannia

'... the spine-chilling sea and the Britons at the very end of the earth.'

Catullus

'The population of the island is countless. Houses rather like those in Gaul are to be seen everywhere and there are enormous numbers of cattle. They use either bronze or gold coinage.'

Julius Caesar

Although the Romans thought of Britannia as a strange and distant land at the very edge of the known world, the island had its own highly developed civilisation before the Romans arrived. We know from archaeological evidence that the Britons were very good metalworkers, carpenters, weavers and farmers. Romans writing about the Britons, however, did not usually acknowledge their achievements.



Bronze and enamel ornament from a horse harness, showing the artistry of British craftsmen.

Farms in Roman Britain

Most inhabitants of Roman Britain lived in the countryside. A typical small farm belonging to a native Briton would have provided for the basic needs of the farmer and his family and their slaves, with perhaps a little surplus left over for trade. His

A British farmhouse was circular, thereby minimising heat loss through the walls, which were usually made of wattle and daub attached to a wooden frame. The steeply sloping thatched roof allowed rain and snow to run off quickly.



Wattle and daub: basketwork covered with clay.

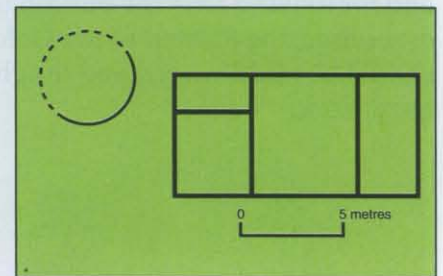


The inside of a large roundhouse, reconstructed at Cranbourne, Dorset. There is a coracle (a boat made of skins) hanging on the wall and a clay oven in the middle of the floor as well as an open hearth.

house consisted of a single round room where everyone in the family lived, worked, slept and ate. Since there were no windows, and only one low, narrow doorway, most of the light would have been provided by the open fire in the centre of the room, which also served as a place to cook and as a source of heat. Without a chimney the room must have been quite smoky inside.

About thirty years after the Roman invasion in AD 43, simple villas began to appear in the countryside. They had only four or five rooms, sometimes linked by a corridor; they were built mainly of timber and wattle and daub, with roofs of stone slabs, tiles or thatch. Some of these early villas are found on the sites of British roundhouses. It is likely that the Britons were attempting to imitate the lifestyle of their Roman conquerors and thus win their favour. Although the owners would have greater privacy and comfort in their new villa, it would have been more difficult and expensive to heat. These early villas are very similar to those found in Roman Gaul. The Britons may have learnt the new building techniques required from Gallic builders and craftsmen.

Later villas were often more complicated in design and were built mostly of stone; the grandest ones might contain long colonnades, under-floor heating, an ornamental garden, mosaics, and a set of baths complete with tepidarium and caldarium. They also had workshops, barns, living quarters for the farm labourers and sheds for the animals. In choosing a place to build his villa, the owner would look not only for attractive surroundings but also practical advantages, such as a nearby supply of running water and shelter from the cold north and east winds.



Plan of an early villa built beside a former roundhouse at Brixworth in Northamptonshire.

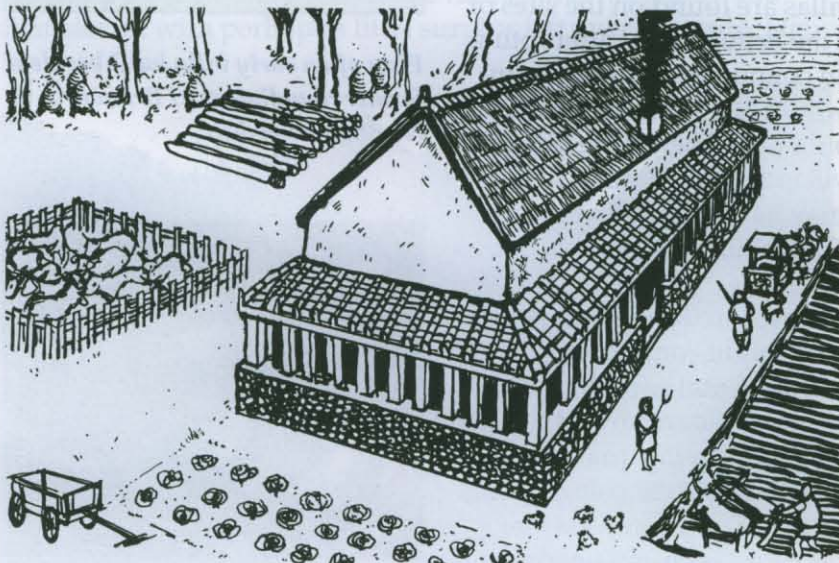


Reconstruction of a later villa in Lullingstone, Kent.

The economy of the farm

The main crops grown in Britain at this time were barley, oats, rye and especially wheat. Archaeologists have found seeds of all these crops, accidentally charred and thus preserved in the earth. Most farms seem to have kept animals such as cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, dogs and horses, in addition to geese and hens; not only did these animals provide food, wool or leather clothing, fertiliser and bone tools, but they could also be used for transport or to provide security. Bees were kept to produce honey, which was used to sweeten food (there was no sugar at that time). Many fruits and vegetables were grown, including some (like cherries and peas) which had been brought to Britain by the Romans. The villas could not produce everything they needed, but home-made products such as leather, meat, timber and honey could be traded for shellfish, salt, wine, pottery and ironware.

A large villa like that belonging to Salvius would be supervised by a farm manager or bailiff. He was often a slave like Varica. The bailiff was responsible for buying any food or other goods that could not be produced on the villa's own land, and for looking after the buildings and slaves. In his book *On agriculture*, the Roman writer Columella says that the bailiff should be middle-aged and toughened from childhood by farm work.



A reconstruction of an early villa in Britain. How many different farming activities can you see?



Pre-Roman Britons probably had sheep like the Soay (above). During the Roman period a breed like the Shetland (below) was developed.



Roman bronze model ploughman, with a yoke of oxen.



Emmer, one of the kinds of wheat the Romans grew. It is bearded like barley.



A pre-Roman British gold coin showing a similar ear of wheat. CAMV stands for Camulodunum (Colchester) where the coin was minted.

The slaves

Farm slaves were described by one Roman landowner as just 'farming equipment with voices'. Most of Salvius' farm slaves would be British, whereas many of his skilled house slaves would be imported from abroad. Slaves working on the land lived a much harsher life than domestic slaves, and slaves working in the mines had the harshest life of all. Many of these had been sent to work in the mines as a punishment and conditions were so bad that this amounted to a death sentence. Some slaves were kept in chains.

In theory, the law gave slaves some protection: for example, any owner who killed a sick slave could be charged with murder. In practice, these laws were often ignored, as in the story of Salvius and the Cantican miners. However, in the first century AD slaves were becoming increasingly scarce and expensive; owners therefore had more motivation to look after the welfare of their slaves.

Some British slaves are known to us by name. For example, a gravestone from Chester was set up by a master in memory of three of his slaves who died young: a slave-boy aged twelve and two ten-year-olds called Atilianus and Anti-Atilianus, probably twins.



A weary young slave-boy waits with a lantern to light his master's way home.

Salvius

Gaius Salvius Liberalis was born in central Italy but, like many ambitious and clever young men, he soon moved to Rome, where he gained a reputation for speaking his mind. After becoming a successful lawyer, he was made a Roman senator, probably by the Emperor Vespasian. In AD 78, at a very early age, he was chosen as one of the Arval brotherhood, a group of twelve distinguished men who met to perform religious ceremonies and in particular to pray for the emperor and his family. Salvius was also put in command of a legion; not only was this a great honour, but it also showed the trust in which Salvius was held by Vespasian. Not long afterwards, in about AD 81, he was sent by Titus, the next emperor, to help Agricola, the Roman governor of the province of Britain.

Salvius' main task was probably to supervise the law courts and look after the southern part of the province while Agricola was away fighting in the north. He would have travelled around the country acting as a judge; he may also have arranged for some of the money raised by farming and mining in Britain to be sent regularly to the emperor in Rome. The stories set in Roman Britain imagine Salvius and his wife Rufilla living in an impressive villa not far from Noviomagus (Chichester) near the Sussex coast.

Our knowledge of Salvius comes mainly from the details on a gravestone discovered in central Italy and an inscription found in a wood near Rome. He is also mentioned by two Roman writers, Pliny and Suetonius. Another gravestone has been found dedicated by his son:

To Vitellia Rufilla, daughter of Gaius, wife of Gaius Salvius Liberalis the consul, priestess of the welfare of the Emperor, best of mothers, Gaius Salvius Vitellianus set this up in his lifetime.



*An artist's impression of Salvius.
How closely does it fit your idea of
his character?*

Vocabulary checklist 13

The way verbs are listed in the checklists for Stages 13–16 is explained on p. 171.

adveniō, advenīre, advēnī	<i>arrive</i>	ita vērō	<i>yes</i>
aedificium	<i>building</i>	nōlō	<i>I do not want</i>
aeger	<i>sick, ill</i>	novus	<i>new</i>
alter	<i>the other,</i> <i>the second</i>	nūllus	<i>not any, no</i>
cantō, cantāre, cantāvī	<i>sing</i>	possum	<i>I can,</i> <i>I am able</i>
cēteri	<i>the others,</i> <i>the rest</i>	ruō, ruere, ruī	<i>rush</i>
custōs	<i>guard</i>	sē	<i>himself</i>
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī	<i>say</i>	trahō, trahere, trāxī	<i>drag</i>
excitō, excitāre, excitāvī	<i>arouse,</i> <i>wake up</i>	vīta	<i>life</i>
fessus	<i>tired</i>	volō	<i>I want</i>
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī	<i>kill</i>	vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī	<i>wound</i>

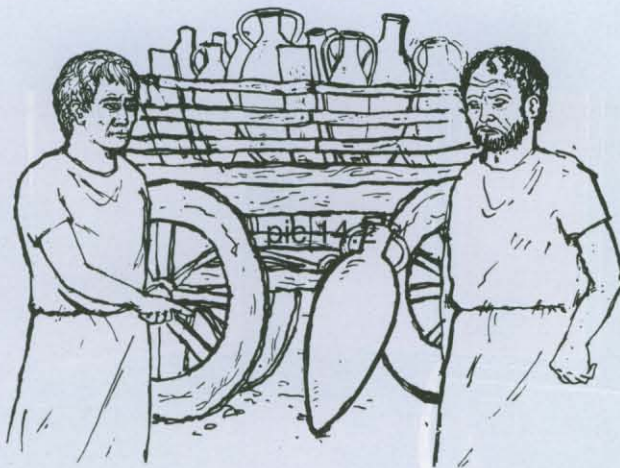


This spectacular gold torc (neck-ornament) was made about 70 BC, presumably for a British chieftain.



APUD SALVIUM

STAGE 14



- 1 Vārica: Phile! portā hanc amphoram in villam!
Philus: amphora magna est. difficile est mihi magnam amphoram portāre.
Vārica: cūr?
Philus: quod ego sum senex.



- 2 Vārica: Loquāx! Anti-Loquāx! portāte hanc amphoram in villam!
Loquāx: amphora gravis est. difficile est nōbīs amphoram gravem portāre.
Vārica: cūr?
Loquāx: quod nōs sumus puerī.



- 3 Vārica: Bregāns! portā hās amphorās in villam!
Bregāns: amphorae gravēs sunt. difficile est mihi amphorās gravēs portāre.
Vārica: sed necesse est!
Bregāns: cūr?
Vārica: necesse est tibi amphorās portāre quod Philus est senex, quod Loquāx et frāter sunt puerī, et...
Bregāns: quod tū es vīlicus!

Rūfilla

Rūfilla in cubiculō sedet. duae ōrnātrīcēs prope eam stant et crīnēs compōnunt. Salvius intrat. Rūfilla, simulatque eum cōnspicit, ōrnātrīcēs ē cubiculō dīmittit.

Rūfilla: Salvī! vir crūdēlis es. ego ad hanc vīllam venīre nōlēbam. in urbe Londiniō manēre volēbam. Londinium est urbs pulcherrima, ubi multās amīcās habeō. difficile est mihi amīcās relinquere.

Salvius: Rūfilla! quam levis es! ubi in urbe Londiniō habitābāmus, cotīdiē ad mē veniēbās. cotīdiē mihi dīcēbās, 'ego quoque vīllam rūsticam habēre volō, sed tū mihi nihil dās.' tandem vīllam tibi dedī, sed etiam nunc nōn es contenta.

Rūfilla: sed ego vīllam prope urbem habēre volēbam. haec vīlla ab urbe longē abest.

Salvius: tū ipsa eam ēlēgistī. ego, quamquam pretium magnum erat, eam libenter ēmī. nōnne haec vīlla est ēlēgāns? nōnne etiam magnifica?

Rūfilla: sed hiems iam appropinquat. nōn commodum est mihi in vīllā rūsticā hiemāre. amīcae meae semper in urbe hiemant. in hōc locō sōla sum. amīcās meās vīsītāre nōn possum.

Salvius: quid dixisti? sōla es? decem ancillās habēs, novem servōs, duās ōrnātrīcēs, coquum Aegyptium...

Rūfilla: et marītum crūdēlissimum. nihil intellegis! nihil cūrās!
(*exit lacrimāns.*)

ōrnātrīcēs: ōrnātrīx *hairdresser*

dīmittit: dīmittere *send away, dismiss*

crūdēlis *cruel*

5 **Londiniō: Londinium** *London*

amīcās: amīca *friend*

relinquere *leave*

levis *changeable, inconsistent*

10 **vīllam rūsticam: vīlla rūstica**

house in the country

etiam *even*

ab urbe *from the city*

15 **tū ipsa** *you yourself*

pretium *price*

libenter *gladly*

ēlēgāns *tasteful, elegant*

hiems *winter*

20 **appropinquat: appropinquāre**

approach

commodum: commodus

convenient

hiemāre *spend the winter*

25 **novem** *nine*

lacrimāns *weeping, crying*



A comb and manicure set from Roman London.



A lady with four ōrnātrīcēs.

Domitilla cubiculum parat

I

'Domitilla! Domitilla! ubi es?' clāmāvit Marcia. Marcia anus erat.
'in hortō sum, Marcia. quid vīs?' respondit Domitilla.

'necesse est nōbīs cubiculum parāre', inquit Marcia. 'domina familiārem ad villam invitāvit.'

'ēheu!' inquit Domitilla. 'fessa sum, quod diū labōrāvī.'

'puella ignāvissima es', inquit Marcia. 'domina ipsa mē ad tē mīsit. necesse est tibi cubiculum verrere. necesse est mihi pavimentum lavāre. curre ad culīnam! quaere scōpās!'

Domitilla ad culīnam lentē ambulābat. irāta erat, quod cubiculum verrere nōlēbat.

'ego ōrnātrīx sum', inquit. 'nōn decōrum est ōrnātrīcibus cubiculum verrere.'

subitō Domitilla cōnsilium cēpit et ad culīnam quam celerrimē festināvit. simulac culīnam intrāvit, lacrimīs sē trādīdit.

Volūbilis attonitus, 'mea columba', inquit, 'cūr lacrimās?'

'lacrimō quod miserrima sum', ancilla coquō respondit. 'per tōtum diem labōrāvī. quam fessa sum! nunc necesse est mihi cubiculum parāre. nōn diūtius labōrāre possum.'

anus old woman

quid vīs? what do you want?

necesse necessary

familiārem: familiāris

5 **relation, relative**

diū for a long time

domina ipsa

the mistress herself

verrere sweep

10 **scōpās: scōpae** broom

lentē slowly

decōrum: decōrus right, proper

lacrimīs sē trādīdit

15 **burst into tears**

miserrima

very miserable, very sad

diūtius any longer

'mea columba, nōlī lacrimāre!' inquit Volūbilis. 'ego tibi cubiculum parāre possum.'

'Volūbilis! quam benignus es!' susurrāvit ancilla. coquus cum ancillā ad cubiculum revēnit. diligenter labōrāvit et cubiculum fēcit pūrum. ancilla laeta 'meum mel!' inquit. 'meae dēliciae!' et coquō ōsculum dedit. coquus ērubescēns ad culīnam revēnit.

nōlī lacrimāre don't cry

20

pūrum: pūrus clean, spotless
mel honey

25

ōsculum kiss
ērubescēns blushing

II

tum Marcia cubiculum intrāvit. anus vix prōcēdere poterat, quod urnam gravem portābat. Domitilla, ubi Marciam cōspexit, clāmāvit,

'ecce! diligenter labōrāvī. cubiculum fēcī pūrum. nunc necesse est tibi pavimentum lavāre.'

Marcia, quamquam erat attonita, Domitillae nihil dīxit. sōla pavimentum lavābat. tandem rem cōnfēcit.

Domitilla statim ad Rūfillam festināvit.

'domina', inquit, 'cubiculum tibi parāvimus, et pavimentum fēcimus nitidum.'

Rūfilla cubiculum cum Domitillā intrāvit et circumspēctāvit.

'bene labōrāvistis, ancillae', inquit. 'sed, quamquam nitidum est pavimentum, nōn decōrum est familiārī meō in hōc cubiculō dormīre. nam cubiculum est inēlegāns. necesse est nōbīs id ōrnāre.'

'tablīnum est ēlegāns', inquit Domitilla. 'in tablīnō, ubi dominus labōrat, sunt multae rēs pretiōsae.'

'ita vērō', inquit Rūfilla, 'in tablīnō est armārium ēlegantissimum. in tablīnō sunt sella aēnea et candēlābrum aureum. age! Domitilla, necesse est nōbīs ad tablīnum īre.'

vix hardly, scarcely
urnam: urna bucket

5

sōla alone, on her own
nitidum: nitidus
gleaming, brilliant
bene well

10

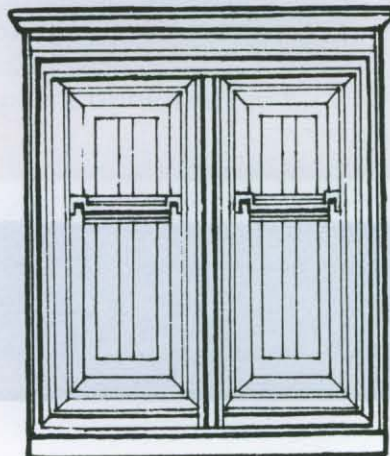
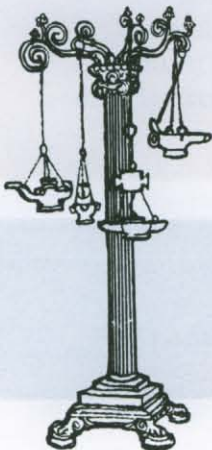
nam for
inēlegāns unattractive
id it

15

ōrnāre decorate
armārium chest, cupboard
aēnea made of bronze
candēlābrum

20

lamp-stand, candelabrum
aureum: aureus
golden, made of gold
age! come on!
īre go



About the language 1: adjectives

- 1 Study the following sentences:

servus **stultus** nōn labōrābat.

*The **stupid** slave was not working.*

agricola servum **ignāvum** pūnīvit.

*The farmer punished the **lazy** slave.*

dominus servō **fessō** praemium dedit.

*The master gave a reward to the **tired** slave.*

The words in **bold type** are **adjectives**. They are used to describe nouns. In each of these examples, the adjective is describing the slave.

- 2 Adjectives change their endings to match the case of the noun they describe.

In the first sentence above, **stultus** is nominative because it describes a nominative noun (**servus**).

In the second sentence, **ignāvum** is accusative, because it describes an accusative noun (**servum**).

In the third sentence, **fessō** is dative, because it describes a dative noun (**servō**).

- 3 Translate the following examples:

a ancilla perterrita ad culinam contendit.

b coquus ancillam perterritam salūtāvit.

c cīvēs mercātōrem fortem laudāvērunt.

d cīvēs mercātōrī fortī praemium dedērunt.

e senex filium bonum habēbat.

f senex filiō bonō villam ēmit.

Write down the Latin noun and adjective pair in each sentence and state whether it is nominative, accusative or dative.



- 4 Adjectives also change their endings to match the number (i.e. singular or plural) of the nouns they describe. An adjective is singular if it describes a singular noun, and plural if it describes a plural noun. Compare the following examples with those in paragraph 1:

servī stultī nōn labōrābant.	<i>The stupid slaves were not working.</i>
agricola servōs ignāvōs pūnīvit.	<i>The farmer punished the lazy slaves.</i>
dominus servīs fessīs praemium dedit.	<i>The master gave a reward to the tired slaves.</i>

- 5 Translate the following examples:

- a fēminae laetae per viās ambulābant.
- b fēmina laeta per viās ambulābat.
- c gladiātor leōnēs ferōcēs necāvit.
- d coquus servīs aegrīs cibum parāvit.
- e pictūra pulchra erat in ātriō.
- f Volūbilis ōrnātrīcem trīstem cōspexit.

Write down the Latin noun and adjective pair in each sentence and state whether the pair is singular or plural.

- 6 When an adjective changes its ending in this way it is said to *agree*, in case and number, with the noun it describes.
- 7 Most adjectives come after the noun. However, adjectives like **magnus**, **parvus** and **multī**, which indicate size or quantity, usually come before the noun they describe. For example:

Rūfilla multās ancillās habēbat.	<i>Rufilla had many slave-girls.</i>
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------

Further examples:

- a Bregāns magnum taurum dūcēbat.
- b coquus amīcīs parvam cēnam parāvit.
- c multī Britannī erant servī.
- d agricola parvīs puerīs equum ostendit.



*administrator, may have used
official tablets like this one.*

in tablīnō

postrīdiē Salvius et Philus in tablīnō sunt. intrat Rūfilla.

Rūfilla:	mī Salvī!		mī Salvī! <i>my dear Salvius!</i>
Salvius:	occupātus sum! necesse est mihi hās epistulās dictāre. ego rem celeriter cōnficere volō. ubi est sella mea?	5	
	<i>(Salvius sellam frūstrā quaerit.)</i>		
Rūfilla:	heus! ubi est ista sella?		heus! <i>hey!</i>
Salvius:	mī cārissime! aliquid tibi dīcere volō. tē nunc audīre nōn possum. epistulās dictāre volō. ecce! Philus parātus adest. stilī et cērae adsunt –	10	cārissime <i>dearest</i> aliquid <i>something</i>
Rūfilla:	Salvī! audī!		
	<i>(tandem Salvius uxōrī cēdit et Philum dīmittit.)</i>		cēdit: cēdere <i>give in, give way</i>
Salvius:	ēheu! abī, Phile! nōn commodum est mihi epistulās dictāre.	15	
Rūfilla:	bene! nunc aliquid tibi dīcere possum. ubi in urbe Londiniō nūper eram, familiārem convēnī.		bene! <i>good!</i> nūper <i>recently</i> convēnī: convenīre <i>meet</i>
Salvius:	tot familiārēs habēs! eōs numerāre nōn possum.		tot <i>so many</i>
Rūfilla:	sed hic familiāris est Quīntus Caecilius Iūcundus. ubi mōns Vesuvius urbem Pompēiōs dēlēvit, Quīntus ex urbe effūgit. quam cōmis est! quam urbānus!	20	cōmis <i>courteous, friendly</i> urbānus <i>smart, fashionable</i>
Salvius:	hercle! ego Pompēiānis nōn crēdō. paucī probī sunt, ceterī mendācēs. ubi in Campāniā militābam, multōs Pompēiānōs cognōscēbam. mercātōrēs Pompēiānī nōs militēs semper dēcipiēbant.	25	paucī <i>a few</i> militābam: militāre <i>be a soldier</i> cognōscēbam: cognōscere <i>get to know</i>
Rūfilla:	stultissimus es! familiāris meus nōn est mercātor. Quīntus vir nōbilis est. eum ad villam nostram invītāvī.		militēs: miles <i>soldier</i>
Salvius:	quid dīxistī? Pompēiānum invītāvistī? ad villam nostram?	30	
Rūfilla:	decōrum est mihi familiārem meum hūc invītāre. ancillae familiārī meō cubiculum parāvērunt. ancillae, quod cubiculum inēlegāns erat, sellam armāriumque tuum in eō posuērunt.		in eō <i>in it</i>
Salvius:	īnsāna es, uxor! Pompēiānī mendāciōrēs sunt quam Britannī. num tū sellam et armārium ē tablīnō extrāxistī?	35	num tū... extrāxistī? <i>surely you did not take?</i>
Rūfilla:	et candēlābrum.		prō dī immortalēs! <i>heavens above!</i>
Salvius:	prō dī immortalēs! ō candēlābrum meum! ō mē miserum!	40	ō mē miserum! <i>oh wretched me! oh dear!</i>

About the language 2: more about adjectives

- 1 In the first language note in this Stage you met sentences like this:

cīvis servum **bonum** salūtāvit. *The citizen greeted the good slave.*

The adjective **bonum** agrees with the noun **servum** in case (accusative) and number (singular). The endings of both words look the same.

- 2 Now study this sentence:

cīvis servum **trīstem** salūtāvit. *The citizen greeted the sad slave.*

The adjective **trīstem** agrees with the noun **servum** in case (accusative) and number (singular) as in the previous example. The endings, however, do not look the same. This is because they belong to different declensions, and have different ways of forming their cases. **trīstis** belongs to the third declension and **servus** belongs to the second declension.

- 3 Translate the following examples:

- a Quīntus fābulam mīrābilem nārrāvit.
- b in villā habitābat senex stultus.
- c gladiātor bēstiās ferōcēs agitābat.
- d dominus amīcō fidēlī dēnāriōs trādīdit.
- e multī mercātōrēs vīnum bibēbant.
- f agricola omnibus puerīs pecūniam dedit.

Write down the Latin noun and adjective pair in each sentence and state whether the pair is nominative, accusative or dative, singular or plural.



A wax tablet with a government stamp on the back. Salvius, as a Roman administrator, may have used official tablets like this one.

Quīntus advenit

When you have read this story, answer the questions below.

Quīntus ad villam advēnit. Salvius ē villā contendit et eum salūtāvit.

'mī Quīnte!' inquit. 'exspectātissimus es! cubiculum optimum tibi parāvimus.'

exspectātissimus: expectātus
welcome

Salvius Quīntum in tablinum dūxit, ubi Rūfilla sedēbat. 5

Rūfilla, postquam familiārem suum salūtāvit, suāviter rīsīt.

'cēnam modicam tibi parāvī', inquit. 'tibi ostreās parāvī et garum Pompēiānum. post cēnam cubiculum tibi ostendere volō.'

modicam ordinary, little
ostreās: ostrea oyster
garum sauce

Salvius, postquam Quīntus cēnam cōnsūpsit, dē urbe Pompēiis quaerēbat. 10

'ubi in Campāniā militābam, saepe urbem Pompēiōs vīsītābam. nōne illa clādēs terribilis erat?'

Rūfilla interpellāvit,

clādēs disaster
terribilis terrible

'cūr Quīntum nostrum vexās? nōn decōrum est. difficile est Quīntō tantam clādem commemorāre.' 15

interpellāvit: interpellāre
interrupt

Rūfilla ad Quīntum sē convertit.

'fortasse, mī Quīnte, fessus es. cubiculum tibi parāvī. cubiculum nōn est ōrnātum. in eō sunt armārium modicum et candēlābrum parvum.' 20

tantam so great, such a great
commemorāre talk about
sē convertit: sē convertere
turn

Salvius irātus nihil dixit.

Quīntus, postquam cubiculum vīdit, exclāmāvit,

'quam ēlegāns est cubiculum! ego nihil ēlegantius vīdī.'

ōrnātum: ōrnātus
elaborately furnished,
decorated

'cōnsentiō', inquit Salvius. 'cubiculum tuum ēlegantius est quam tablinum meum.' 25

ēlegantius more tasteful

Questions

Marks

1 Find four examples in this story where Salvius and Rufilla are not telling the truth. In each case, explain why their words are untrue.

4 + 4

2 Why do you think Quintus says so little in this story? Think of two reasons.

2

TOTAL 10



Oyster shells are common finds on Roman sites in Britain. These come from Verulamium (St Albans).

tripodes argentei

Quintus in cubiculō sedet. Anti-Loquāx celeriter intrat.

Anti-Loquāx: salvē! necesse est dominō meō ad aulam ire. rēx Cogidubnus omnēs nōbilēs ad sacrificium invītāvit.

Quintus: rēgem hodiē vīsītāmus?

Anti-Loquāx: ita vērō. quotannis rēx sacrificium facit, quod imperātorem Claudium honōrāre vult.

Quintus: cūr Claudium honōrāre vult?

Anti-Loquāx: decōrum est Cogidubnō Claudium honōrāre. nam Claudius erat imperātor quī Cogidubnum rēgem fēcit.

Quintus: nunc rem intellegō. necesse est mihi dōnum rēgī ferre. in arcā meā sunt duo tripodes argentei. illi tripodes sunt dōnum optimum.

(Anti-Loquāx ē cubiculō exit et Salviō dē tripodibus argenteis nārrat. Salvius statim ad cellārium contendit.)

Salvius: necesse est mihi rēgem Cogidubnum vīsītare. dōnum eī ferre volō.

cellārius: nōn difficile est nōbīs dōnum invenire, domine. ecce! urna aēnea. antiquissima est. placetne tibi?

Salvius: mihi nōn placet. dōnum aēneum Cogidubnō ferre nōlō.

tripodes tripods
argentei: argenteus
made of silver

aulam: aula palace

5

quotannis every year
imperātorem: imperātor
emperor
honōrāre honour

10

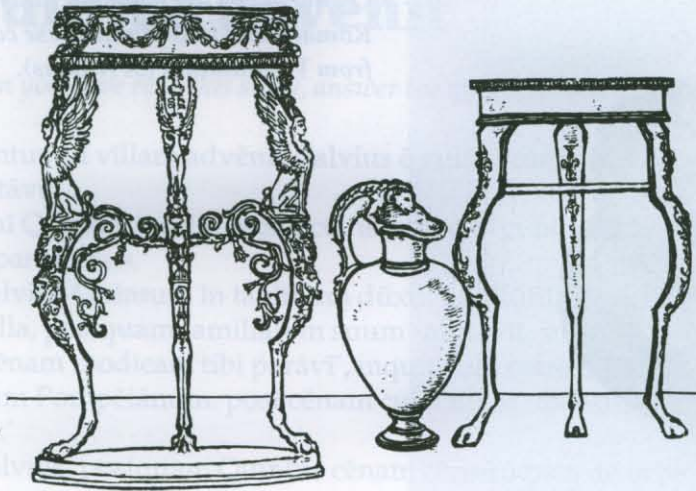
arcā: arca strong-box, chest

15

cellārium: cellārius steward

20

urna jar, jug



(cellārius Salviō amphoram dēmōnstrat.)

cellārius: nōnne vīnum est dōnum optimum, domine?
 Salvius: minimē! Cogidubnus multās amphorās habet,
 multumque vīnum. rēx vīnum ex Italiā cotīdiē
 importat.

25

amphoram: amphora wine-jar
dēmōnstrat: dēmōnstrāre
 point out, show

importat: importāre import

(subitō Salvius statuam parvam cōspicit.)

cellārius: euge! hanc statuam rēgī ferre possum. aurāta est
 Salvius: statua. Quīntus rēgī dōnum argenteum ferre vult;
 cellārius: ego tamen aurātum dōnum ferre possum!
 Salvius: domine! nōn dēbēs.
 cellārius: cūr nōn dēbeō?
 Salvius: Cogidubnus ipse tibi illam statuam dedit!
 cellārius: hercle! necesse est mihi istam urnam ad aulam
 ferre.

30

aurāta gilded, gold-plated

nōn dēbēs
 you shouldn't, you mustn't

35



The British aristocracy loved Roman silver. This elegant wine cup was made about the time of our story. It is one of several found buried in Norfolk.

Practising the language

1 Complete each sentence with the right form of the adjective. Then translate the sentence.

- | | | |
|---|---|----------------------------|
| a | servī canem retrāxērunt. | (ferōx, ferōcem) |
| b | mercātor pecūniam āmīsīt. | (stultus, stultum) |
| c | ego iuvenēs in forō vīdī. | (multī, multōs) |
| d | ōrnātrīx coquō ōsculum dedit. | (laeta, laetam) |
| e | amīcī libertum servāvērunt. | (fortēs, fortibus) |
| f | māter puerīs cibum parāvīt. | (parvī, parvōs, parvīs) |
| g | Bregāns amphoram portāre nōlēbat. | (gravis, gravem, gravī) |
| h | domina ancillae stolam ēmit. | (fidēlis, fidēlem, fidēlī) |

2 Complete each sentence with the right form of the imperfect tense from the list below and then translate. You will have to use one word more than once.

eram	erāmus
erās	erātis
erat	erant

- a vīlicus anxius; nam Salvius irātus.
b vōs gladiōs habēbātis quod vōs custōdēs.
c servī in āreā, ubi Salvium expectābant.
d tū dominus; decōrum tibi celeriter prōcēdere.
e nōs nōn ignāvī; in fundō diligenter labōrābāmus.
f ego in cubiculō iacēbam quod aeger

The Romans in Britain

The British tribes

Before the Roman invasion, the Britons lived in tribes, usually ruled by a king or queen. A chieftain was a wealthy landowner who controlled a very small area and owed his loyalty to a king or queen. Most chieftains maintained a band of warriors who practised their fighting skills by hunting wild animals and raiding settlements belonging to other tribes. Many families owned slaves.

Religion was in the hands of the Druids. These powerful priests, who acted as judges in disputes, worshipped the gods in sacred woodlands with ceremonies that sometimes included human sacrifice. They encouraged fierce British resistance to the Roman invasion.

The conquest

The first Roman general to lead his soldiers into Britain was Julius Caesar, in 55 BC. Caesar wrote an account of his visit to Britain, in which he described the inhabitants as fierce warriors, living on good agricultural or pasture land, in a country rich in timber and minerals. Their skills included not only farming, but also making pottery and working with iron and bronze.

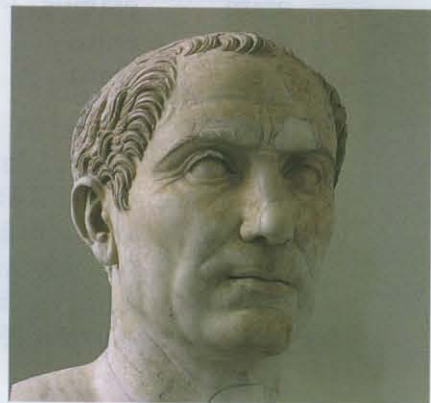
Caesar wanted to find out whether the rewards to be gained by occupying Britain were worth the trouble of launching a major military campaign. But after another short visit in 54 BC, he did not explore any further. His attention was diverted by wars elsewhere, first against the Gauls and then against his own Roman government. Ten years later, he was assassinated.

Caesar's great-nephew Augustus became the first Roman emperor. He and his immediate successors did not consider Britain to be worth the trouble of conquering. But in AD 43 the Emperor Claudius decided to invade. Perhaps he had received fresh information about British wealth; more probably he needed some military success for his own prestige. Claudius did not lead the invasion force himself, but he followed it. He spent sixteen days in Britain, watching his army's assault on Colchester (Camulodunum) and giving official approval to the actions of his commander Aulus Plautius.

Eleven British kings surrendered after this campaign, and Britain was declared a Roman province, with Aulus Plautius as its first governor. This meant that the Romans were taking over the country as part of their empire. From then on, Roman officials would enforce Roman law and collect Roman taxes. Romans would be able to buy land in Britain and use it for agriculture or mining. And the Roman army would be present to keep the peace in the province, firmly and sometimes brutally.



Skull of a pre-conquest Briton, who was buried with a crown on his head.



The Romans who conquered: Julius Caesar (above) and the Emperor Claudius (below).



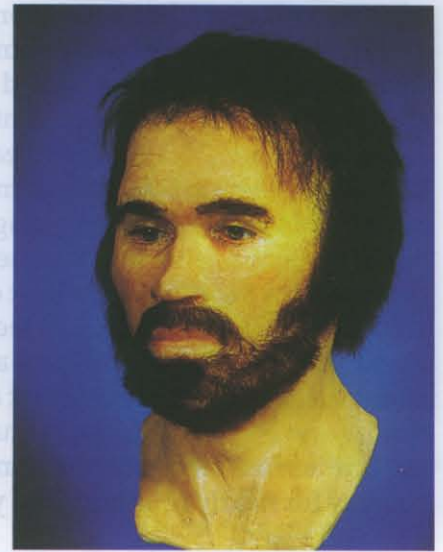
Some British rulers, like King Cogidubnus in the south, chose to co-operate with the invaders and became allies and dependants of Rome. Others, such as Caratacus in Wales, and Queen Boudica in East Anglia, resisted the Romans bitterly but unsuccessfully. The Romans gradually moved further north, occupying the Midlands and Wales, then the northern kingdom of Brigantia and finally part of Scotland.

The stories in Stages 13 and 14 are set in the time of Britain's most famous governor, Gnaeus Julius Agricola. Agricola stayed in the province for seven years (AD 78–85). He led his army into the Scottish highlands where he built a number of forts, some of which have only recently been discovered. He effectively put an end to Scottish resistance in AD 84 by defeating their army at the battle of Mons Graupius near Aberdeen.

Romanisation and trade

Agricola's mission in Britain was not just military victory. His son-in-law, the historian Tacitus, says: 'He wanted to accustom the Britons to a life of peace by providing them with the comforts of civilisation. He gave personal encouragement and official aid to the building of temples, forums and houses... He educated the sons of the chiefs... so that instead of hating the Latin language, they were eager to speak it well.'

In Stage 13 we saw how some British farmers began to build villas in the Roman style. Towns, too, were built or rebuilt on the Roman grid system, with forums, temples and other public buildings similar to those in Roman Gaul. Gradually, a network



This is an artist's reconstruction of the head of a man whose body was found preserved in a peat bog. The Britons may have sacrificed him to their gods, perhaps in an attempt to keep the Romans away.



Aulus Plautius' men dug these ditches to defend their camp at Rutupiae (Richborough). The fortress walls were added later, in the third century AD.

Claudius built a triumphal arch at Rome to celebrate the capture of Britain. Part of the inscription survives (right). Claudius also pictured the arch on his coins.



of new roads spread across the province. The roads were originally built for the use of Roman soldiers; but before long they were being extensively used by merchants as well. Trade between Britain and the continent increased rapidly.

Some Britons became very wealthy from trade and welcomed the Romans enthusiastically; many of the leading families responded to Agricola's encouragement to adopt a Roman lifestyle. On the other hand, some Britons suffered severely from the arrival of the Romans, whilst others were hardly affected at all. Many no doubt had mixed feelings about becoming part of the Roman empire. It gave them a share in Roman prosperity and the Roman way of life; but it also meant Roman taxes and a Roman governor backed by Roman troops. However, whether the Britons liked it or not, the Romans were to remain in their country for nearly four hundred years.



Boudica

Boudica was the wife of King Prasutagus, king of the Iceni, a tribe who lived in East Anglia. On the death of Prasutagus all his lands and property were confiscated by the Romans, Boudica was flogged and her daughters raped. Boudica and the Iceni would not let these unprovoked insults go unavenged and, joining with other discontented tribes, they raised a rebellion (AD 60).

At first the rebels were very successful. They met with no effective opposition, since the Roman governor, Suetonius Paulinus, was far away in Anglesey (Mona) fighting the Druids and their supporters. Boudica's forces looted and destroyed the Roman town of Colchester, killing all the inhabitants. London



Watling Street, passing through Northamptonshire.

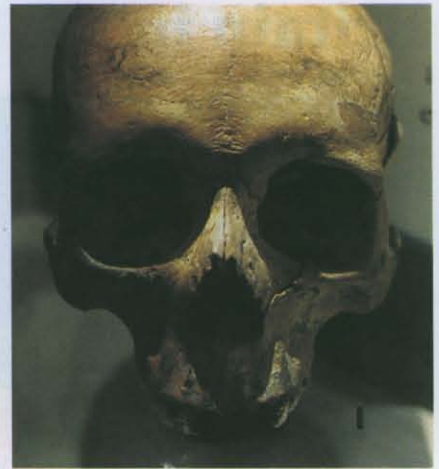
The Romans set up cities in Britain, with forums and temples. This is a model of the temple of the deified Emperor Claudius at Colchester.



Boudica leading her warriors, according to the sculpture on the Thames Embankment in London.

(Londinium) and St Albans (Verulamium) suffered the same fate. Eventually Suetonius Paulinus confronted Boudica and her forces with his legions. Although the Roman troops were heavily outnumbered, their superior training and tactics won them a decisive victory. Rather than face capture, Boudica committed suicide by taking poison.

In Roman eyes Boudica was a remarkable and fearsome figure, not only because she brought them to the brink of disaster, but also because she was a woman who wielded real power. In this she was not alone among British women. From the little we know of their lives, some from the wealthier families had equal rights with men. They could own property in their own right within marriage, divorce their husbands and, after death, be buried with precious possessions, with the same funeral rites as their menfolk. By contrast, even high-born Roman women like Rufilla, although they had an important role to play in running their households, were legally under the control of a male relative. It is not surprising therefore that Boudica was regarded by the Romans as an unnatural, dangerous but fascinating woman.



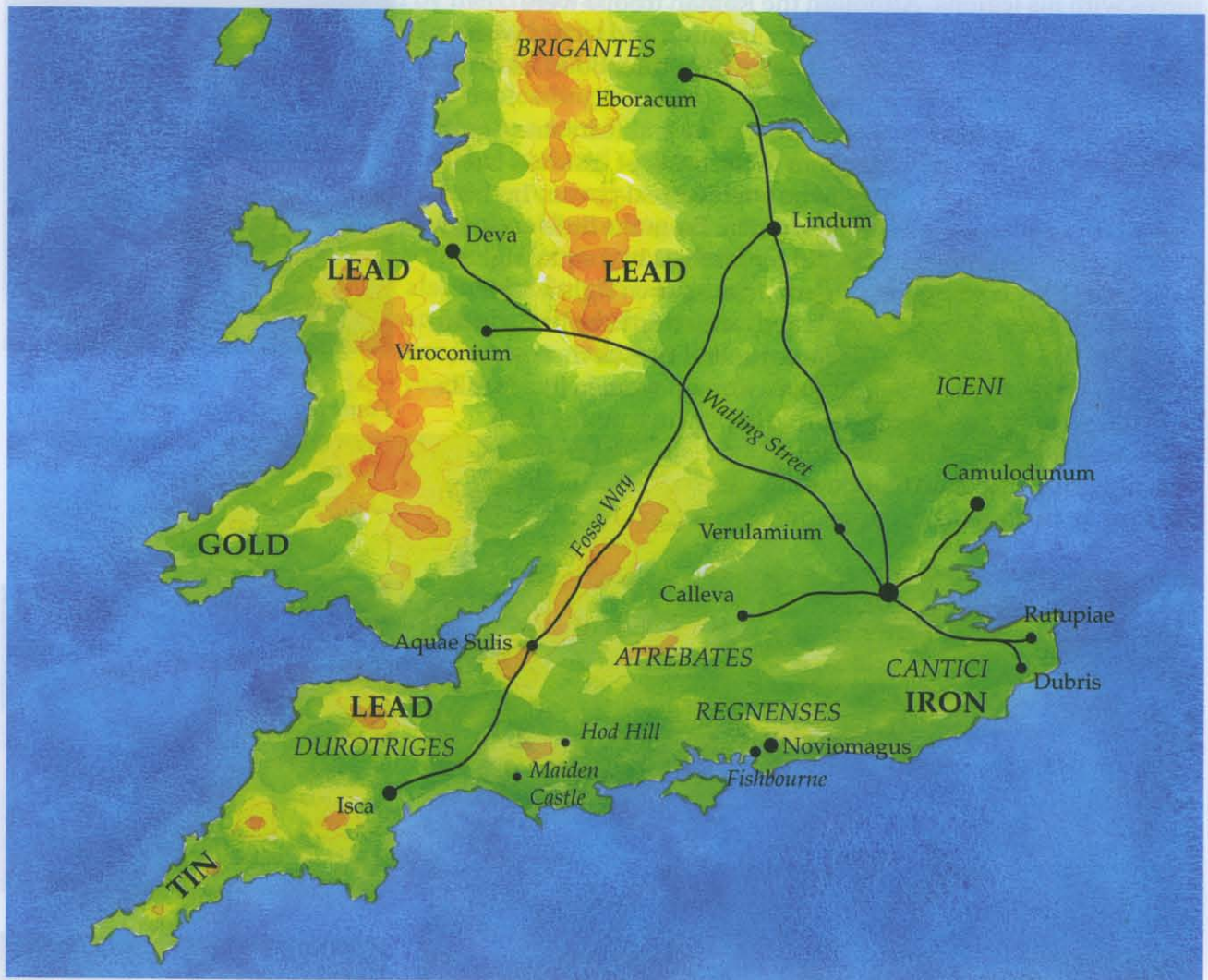
Finds from the towns she captured illustrate the havoc Boudica caused. This skull, found in London, may have belonged to a man killed by Boudica's army.



At Colchester, the Iceni massacred some of the inhabitants who had taken refuge in the temple of Claudius. They then burned the city. Archaeologists have found a thick layer of burned debris, including the broken stock of a pottery shop (above) and some charred dates (above right) – both imported goods. The bronze head of Claudius (right) was probably wrenched from one of his statues in the city and thrown into a river.



Britain in the first century AD



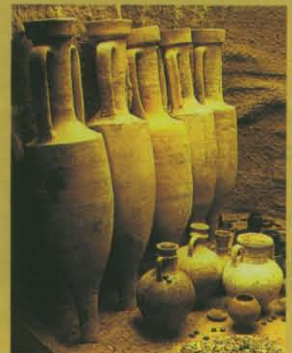
Imports and exports





A lead miner.

Among the items exported from Britain in Roman times were grain, hunting dogs and metals: iron, gold, tin and lead. In return, Britain imported wine, oil and other goods from Rome and the rest of the empire.

A wealthy Briton who died shortly before the Roman conquest was already importing wine. He had jars of it (amphorae) buried with him.



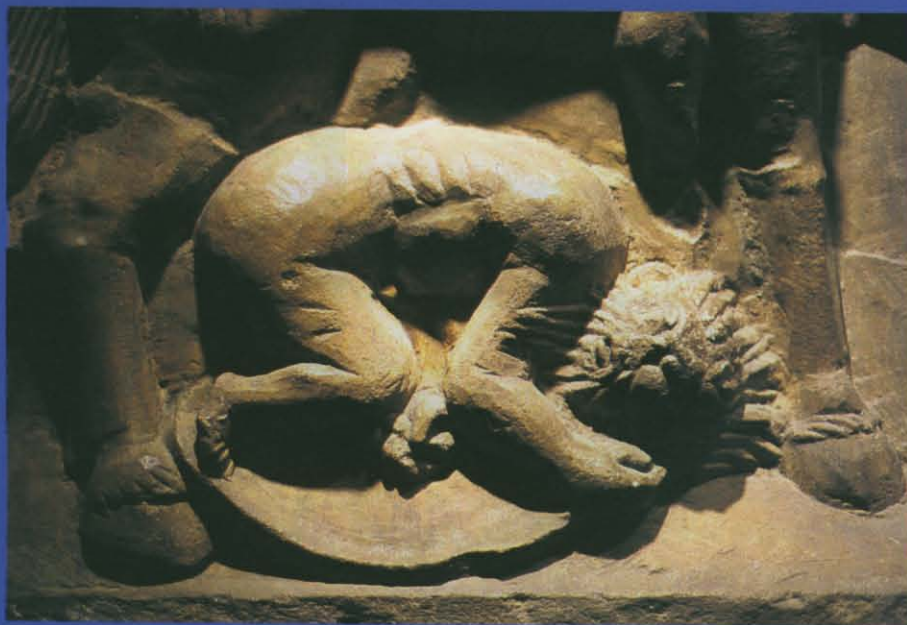
Important events and dates

Emperor	Year	Event
	BC 55-54	Julius Caesar's expeditions to Britain.
	44	Caesar assassinated.
Augustus	27	The first emperor.
	AD	
Tiberius	14	
Gaius (Caligula)	37	
Claudius	41	
	43	Invasion of Britain under Aulus Plautius. Claudius enters Colchester in triumph. Vespasian's expedition against the Durotriges. Britain becomes a Roman province.
	51	
Nero	54	Defeat of Caratacus in Wales.
	60/61	Revolt of Boudica in East Anglia.
Vespasian	69	Civil War in Italy.
	75	The building of Fishbourne palace begins.
	78	Agricola comes to Britain as Governor.
Titus	79	Eruption of Vesuvius.
	80	
Domitian	81	Agricola's Scottish campaigns begin. Salvius is sent to Britain.
	84	Battle of Mons Graupius.
Honorius	410	Romans cease to defend Britain.



Vocabulary checklist 14

aliquid	<i>something</i>	fidēlis	<i>faithful, loyal</i>
apud	<i>among, at the house of</i>	ipse, ipsa	<i>himself, herself</i>
attonitus	<i>astonished</i>	iste	<i>that</i>
aula	<i>palace</i>	marītus	<i>husband</i>
cotīdiē	<i>every day</i>	necesse	<i>necessary</i>
decōrus	<i>right, proper</i>	num?	<i>surely... not?</i>
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī	<i>destroy</i>	quam	<i>how</i>
deus	<i>god</i>	quamquam	<i>although</i>
difficilis	<i>difficult</i>	-que	<i>and</i>
dīlīgenter	<i>carefully</i>	rēx	<i>king</i>
domina	<i>mistress</i>	ubi	<i>when</i>
dōnum	<i>present, gift</i>		



Detail of a Roman cavalryman's gravestone. A conquered Briton cowers beneath the horse's hooves.



REX COGIDUBNUS

STAGE 15



- 1 multī Britannī ad aulam vēnerunt.
senex, quī scēptrum tenēbat, erat rēx
Cogidubnus.



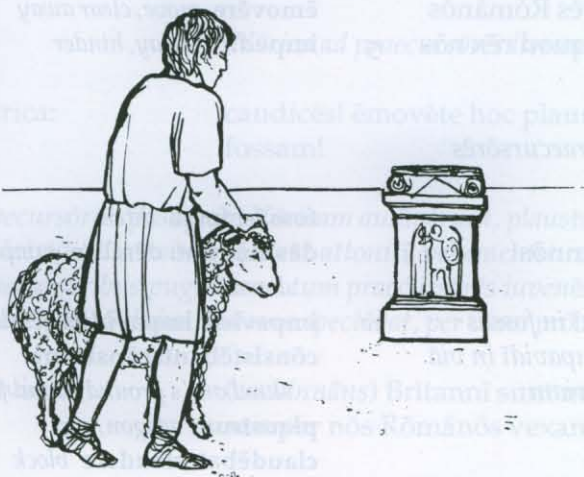
- 2 fēmina prope Cogidubnum sedēbat.
fēmina, quae diadēma gerēbat, erat
rēgīna.



- 3 multī Rōmānī Cogidubnō rēs pretiōsās
dabant. dōnum, quod rēgem valdē
dēlectāvit, erat equus.



4 duae ancillae ad rēgem vēnērunt.
vīnum, quod ancillae ferēbant, erat in
paterā aureā. rēx vīnum libāvit.



5 servus agnum ad āram dūxit. agnus,
quem servus dūcēbat, erat victima.



6 sacerdos victimam īspexit. victima,
quam servus tenēbat, bālāvit. sacerdos
victimam interfēcit.

ad aulam

agmen longissimum ad aulam prōcēdēbat. in primā parte ibant decem servī. hī servī, quī virgās longās tenēbant, erant praecursōrēs. in mediō agmine Salvius et Quīntus equitābant. post eōs ambulābant trēs ancillae, quae urnam et tripodas portābant. aliae ancillae flōrēs ferēbant. postrēmō prōcēdēbant vīgintī servī. agmen, quod tōtam viam complēbat, erat splendidum.

multī quoque Britannī cum uxōribus ad aulam ibant. magna turba erat in viā. tum Vārica, quī cum praecursōribus equitābat, ad Salvium rediit.

Vārica: domine, difficile est nōbīs prōcēdere, quod hī Britannī viam complent. ē viā exīre nōlunt. quid facere dēbeō?

Salvius: (īrātus) necesse est praecursōribus Britannōs ē viā ēmovēre. nōn decōrum est Britannīs cīvēs Rōmānōs impedīre. ego quam celerrimē ire volō, quod rēx nōs exspectat.

(Vārica, quī dominum irātum timēbat, ad praecursōrēs rediit.)

Vārica: asinī estis! virgās habētis. ēmovēte Britannōs!

tum praecursōrēs statim virgās vibrābant. multī Britannī in fossās dēsiluērunt, quod virgās timēbant. duo iuvenēs tamen impavidī in viā cōnsistēbant. prope iuvenēs erat plaustrum, quod tōtam viam claudēbat.

agmen procession
in primā parte in the forefront
virgās: virga rod, stick
praecursōrēs: praecursor
5 forerunner (sent ahead of a procession to clear the way)
equitābant: equitare ride
flōrēs: flōs flower

facere dēbeō ought to do

ēmōvēre move, clear away
impedīre delay, hinder

fossās: fossa ditch
dēsiluērunt: dēsilire jump
down

impavidī: impavidus fearless
cōnsistēbant: cōnsistere
stand one's ground, stand firm

plaustrum wagon, cart
claudēbat: claudere block



aula

Vārica: cūr viam clauditis? necesse est dominō meō
ad aulam ire. 25

iuuenis p̄rimus: nōs quoque ad aulam contendimus. rēgem
vīsītāre volumus. sed plaustrum movēre
nōn possumus, quod plaustrum rotam
frāctam habet.

movēre move
rotam: rota wheel

iuuenis secundus: amīcus noster, quem nōs exspectāmus, aliam 30
rotam quaerit. amīcum exspectāre dēbēmus.

(Vārica anxius ad Salvium iterum rediit.)

Vārica: plaustrum, quod vidēs, domine, rotam
frāctam habet. difficile est nobīs prōcēdere,
quod hoc plaustrum tōtam viam claudit. 35

Salvius: (irātior quam antea) num surdus es? caudex!
nōn commodum est mihi in hōc locō
manēre. quam celerrimē prōcēdere volō.

anteā before
surdus deaf

(Vārica ad praecursōrēs iterum rediit.)

Vārica: caudicēs! ēmovēte hoc plaustrum! dēicite in 40
fossam!

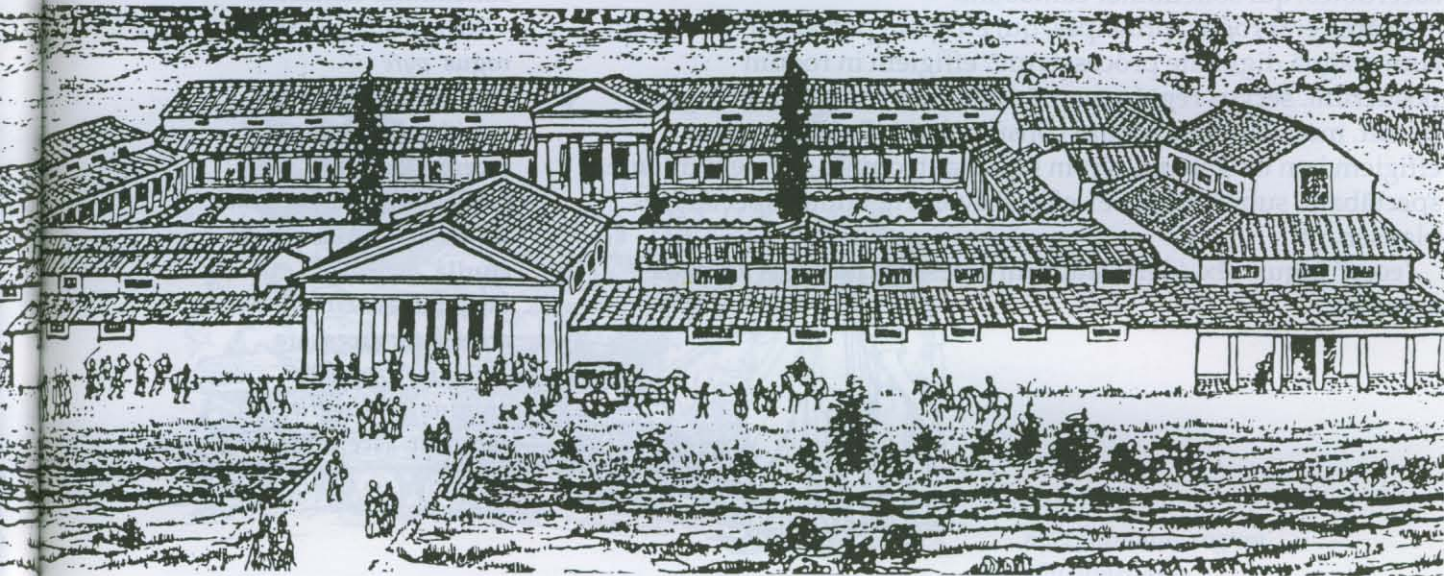
dēicite! throw!

praecursōrēs, postquam Vāricam audīvērunt, plaustrum in fossam
dēiēcērunt. iuuenēs, quī erant attonitī, vehementer resistēbant et cum
praecursōribus pugnābant. tum praecursōrēs iuuenēs quoque in fossam
dēiēcērunt. Salvius, quī rem spectābat, per viam prōcessit. 45

resistēbant: resistere resist

Salvius: (cachinnāns) Britannī sunt molestissimī.
semper nōs Rōmānōs vexant.

cachinnāns laughing, cackling
molestissimī: molestus
troublesome



caerimōnia

caerimōnia ceremony

When you have read this story, answer the questions on page 49.

servus Salvium et Quīntum ad ātrium dūxit. illī, postquam ātrium intrāvērunt, magnam turbam vīdērunt. multī prīncipēs Britannicī multaeque fēminae in ātriō erant. sermōnēs inter sē habēbant. aderant quoque multī Rōmānī, quī prope prīncipēs sedēbant. haec multitudō, quae ātrium complēbat, magnum clāmōrem faciēbat.

in mediō ātriō Quīntus et Salvius lectum vīdērunt. in lectō erat effigiēs cērāta. Quīntus effigiem agnōvit.

'bona est effigiēs!' inquit. 'imperātor Claudius est!'

'ita vērō', respondit Salvius. 'rēx Cogidubnus Claudium quotannīs honōrat. fabrī ex Italiā quotannīs veniunt. fabrī, quī perītissimī sunt, effigiem faciunt.'

subitō turba, quae prope iānuam stābat, ad terram prōcubuit. prīncipēs Britannicī, quī in mediō ātriō sedēbant, celeriter surrēxērunt. etiam Rōmānī tacēbant.

'rēx adest', susurrāvit Salvius.

per iānuam intrāvit senex. parvus puer senem dūcēbat, quod claudicābat. rēx et puer lentē per turbam prōcēdēbant. rēx, postquam ad effigiem advēnit, vīnum libāvit. tum sacerdotēs, quī prope effigiem stābant, victimās ad rēgem dūxērunt. Cogidubnus victimās diligenter inspexit. victima, quam rēx ēlēgit, erat agnus niveus. rēx eum sacrificāvit.

'decōrum est nōbīs Claudium honōrāre', inquit.

sacerdotēs quoque victimās cēterās sacrificāvērunt. tum decem prīncipēs Britannicī lectum in umerōs sustulērunt. effigiem ex ātriō portāvērunt. post prīncipēs vērunt sacerdotēs, quī sollemniter cantābant.

in āreā erat robus. prīncipēs, quī effigiem portābant, ad robum cum magnā dignitāte prōcessērunt. effigiem in robum posuērunt. servus rēgī facem trādīdit. tum rēx facem in robum posuit. mox flammae robum cōsūmēbant. flammae, quae effigiem iam tangēbant, cēram liquābant. omnēs effigiem intentē spectābant. subitō aquila ex effigiē ēvolāvit. omnēs spectātōrēs plausērunt.

'ecce!' inquit rēx. 'deī Claudium arcessunt. animus ad deōs ascendit.'

ātrium hall

illī they

prīncipēs: prīnceps chief,
chieftain

Britannicī: Britannicus British

sermōnēs: sermō conversation

inter sē among themselves, with
each other

multitudō crowd

effigiēs cērāta wax image

bona good

fabrī: faber craftsman

prōcubuit: prōcumbere fall

claudicābat: claudicāre

be lame, limp

vīnum libāvit

poured wine as an offering

sacerdotēs: sacerdotēs priest

victimās: victima victim

agnus lamb

niveus snow-white

sacrificāvit: sacrificāre

sacrifice

umerōs: umerus shoulder

sustulērunt: tollere raise, lift up

sollemniter cantābant

were chanting solemnly

robus pyre

cum magnā dignitāte

with great dignity

facem: fax torch

tangēbant: tangere touch

liquābant: liquāre melt

aquila eagle

ēvolāvit: ēvolāre fly out

arcessunt: arcessere

summon, send for

animus soul, spirit

ascendit: ascendere climb, rise

Questions

	Marks
1 Where was the crowd gathered for the ceremony? Which three groups of people did Salvius and Quintus see there (lines 2–5)?	2
2 haec multitudō (line 5). Suggest two English adjectives which you think best describe the crowd in this sentence.	2
3 Where was the wax image? Whom did it represent (lines 7–9)?	1 + 1
4 bona est effigiēs . How did Salvius explain the good quality of the image (lines 11–12)?	2
5 In lines 13–15, how did the different sections of the crowd behave?	2 + 1 + 1
6 Why was the king accompanied by a boy (lines 17–18)?	1
7 In lines 18–22 what two offerings did the king make? How did the priests assist the king in this ceremony?	2 + 1
8 After the priests sacrificed their victims, what did the British chieftains do (lines 25–6)?	2
9 Where was the image placed (lines 28–30)?	1
10 servus rēgī facem trādidit . What did the king do with the torch? What then happened to the image (lines 30–2)?	2
11 In lines 33–4, why did the spectators applaud?	1
12 What two things did the king say about Claudius (lines 35–6)? What did the aquila represent?	2 + 1
TOTAL	25



*mox flammae rogam
cōnsūmēbant.*

About the language 1: relative clauses

- 1 Study the following pair of sentences:

ancilla urnam portābat.
The slave-girl was carrying the jug.

ancilla, **quae post Salvium ambulābat**, urnam portābat.
The slave-girl, who was walking behind Salvius, was carrying the jug.

The group of words in **bold type** is known as a **relative clause**.

- 2 A relative clause is used to describe a noun. For example:

vīlicus, **quī cum praecursōribus equitābat**, ad Salvium rediit.
The farm manager, who was riding with the forerunners, returned to Salvius.

prope iuvenēs erat plaustrum, **quod tōtam viam claudēbat**.
Near the young men was a wagon, which was blocking the whole road.

In the first example, the relative clause describes the farm manager; in the second, the relative clause describes the wagon.

- 3 Translate the following examples:

- a rēx, quī scēptrum tenēbat, in ātriō sedēbat.
- b vīnum, quod Salvius bibēbat, erat optimum.
- c ancillae, quae dominum timēbant, ē villā festināvērunt.
- d canis, quem Bregāns dūcēbat, ferōcissimus erat.
- e in viā erant multī Britannī, quī Rōmānōs impediēbant.
- f cēna, quam Volūbilis parābat, erat splendida.

For each example, write down the Latin relative clause and the Latin noun it describes.

lūdī fūnebrēs

lūdī fūnebrēs *funeral games*

I

post caerimōniam rēx Cogidubnus pompam ad lītus dūxit. ibi Britannī lūdōs fūnebrēs celebrāvērunt. aderant Rēgnēsēs, Canticī et aliae gentēs Britannicae.

competītōrēs diū inter sē certābant. Canticī laetissimī erant, quod semper vincēbant. āthlēta Canticus, quī celerrimē cucurrit, 5 cēterōs facile superāvit. alter āthlēta Canticus, quī perītissimus erat, discum longius quam cēterī ēmisit.

postrēmō Cogidubnus certāmen nāvāle inter Canticōs et Rēgnēsēs nūtiāvit. Belimicus nāvī Canticae praeerat; prīnceps Canticus erat, homō superbus et īsolēns. Dumnorix, quī alterī 10 nāvī praeerat, prīnceps Rēgnēsīs erat, vir fortis et probus. nautae, postquam nāvēs parāvērunt, signum intentē exspectābant. subitō tuba sonuit. nāvēs statim per undās ruērunt. spectātōrēs, quī in lītore stābant, magnōs clāmōrēs sustulērunt. 15

pompam: *pompa* *procession*

ad lītus *to the sea-shore*

gentēs: *gēns* *tribe*

competītōrēs: **competītōr**

competitor

certābant: *certāre* *compete*

vincēbant: *vincere*

be victorious, win

longius *further*

certāmen nāvāle *boat-race*

inter Canticōs et Rēgnēsēs

between the Canticī and the

Regnenses

superbus *arrogant, proud*

undās: *unda* *wave*

in lītore *on the shore*



II

procul in marī erat saxum ingēns. hoc saxum erat mēta. nāvēs ad mētā ruēbant. nāvis Rēgnēnsis, quam Dumnorix dīrigēbat, iam prior erat. Dumnorix, ubi saxō appropinquāvit, nāvem subitō ad dextram vertit.

‘ecce!’ inquit Dumnorix. ‘periculōsum est nōbīs prope saxum nāvigāre, quod scopulus sub undīs latet. necesse est nōbīs scopulum vitāre.’

Belimicus tamen, quī scopulum ignōrābat, cursum rēctum tenēbat.

‘amīcī’, clāmāvit, ‘nōs vincere possumus, quod Dumnorix ad dextram abiit. hī Rēgnēnsēs sunt timidī; facile est nōbīs vincere, quod nōs sumus fortiōrēs.’

nautae Canticī Belimicō crēdēbant. mox nāvem Rēgnēsem superāvērunt et priōrēs mētae appropinquāvērunt. Belimicus, quī scopulum nōn vidit, Dumnorigem dēridēbat. subitō nāvis Cantica in scopulum incurrit. nautae perterritī clāmāvērunt; aqua nāvem complēbat. Belimicus et Canticī nihil facere poterant; nāvis mox summersa erat.

intereā Dumnorix, quī cum summā cūrā nāvigābat, circum mētā nāvem dīrēxit. nāvis ad lītus incolumis pervēnit. multī spectātōrēs Dumnorigem laudāvērunt. Rēgnēnsēs laetī, Canticī miserī erant. tum omnēs ad mare oculōs vertēbant. difficile erat eīs nautās vidēre, quod in undīs natābant. omnēs tamen Belimicum vidēre poterant, quod in summō saxō sedēbat. madidus ad saxum haerēbat et auxilium postulābat.

procul *far off*
 in marī *in the sea*
 saxum *rock*
 mēta *turning-point*
 dīrigēbat: dīrigere *steer*
 prior *in front, first*
 ad dextram *to the right*
 nāvigāre *sail*
 scopulus *reef*
 sub *under*
 latet: latēre *lie hidden*
 vitāre *avoid*
 10 ignōrābat *did not know about*
 cursum rēctum
 a straight course
 timidī: timidus
 fearful, frightened
 15 dēridēbat: dēridēre
 mock, jeer at
 incurrit: incurrere
 run onto, collide
 summersa *sunk*
 20 intereā *meanwhile*
 cum summā cūrā
 with the greatest care
 circum *around*
 incolumis *safe*
 25 oculōs: oculus *eye*
 eīs *for them*
 natābant: natāre *swim*
 in summō saxō
 on the top of the rock
 madidus *soaked through*
 haerēbat: haerēre *cling*



About the language 2: imperfect tense of **possum**, etc

- 1 In Stage 13, you met the present tense of **possum**, 'I am able':

Loquāx currere potest. ego labōrāre nōn possum.
Loquax is able to run. *I am not able to work.*

- 2 You have also met **possum** in the imperfect tense:

Loquāx currere poterat. ego labōrāre nōn poteram.
Loquax was able to run. *I wasn't able to work.*
or *Loquax could run.* or *I couldn't work.*

- 3 The complete imperfect tense of **possum** is:

(ego)	poteram	<i>I was able or I could</i>
(tū)	poterās	<i>you (singular) were able</i>
	poterat	<i>he was able</i>
(nōs)	poterāmus	<i>we were able</i>
(vōs)	poterātis	<i>you (plural) were able</i>
	poterant	<i>they were able</i>

- 4 Further examples:

- a servī sōlem vidēre nōn poterant.
- b Bregāns amphoram portāre nōn poterat.
- c nōs labōrāre poterāmus.
- d in urbe manēre nōn poterās.

- 5 The imperfect tenses of **volō** and **nōlō** are formed in the same way as the imperfect of **trahō**: **volēbam**, 'I was willing', 'I wanted'; **nōlēbam**, 'I was unwilling', 'I did not want'.

- 6 Translate the following examples:

- a Rūfilla villam prope urbem habēre volēbat.
- b nōs redire nōlēbāmus.
- c servum interficere nōlēbant.
- d cūr festināre volēbās?

Practising the language

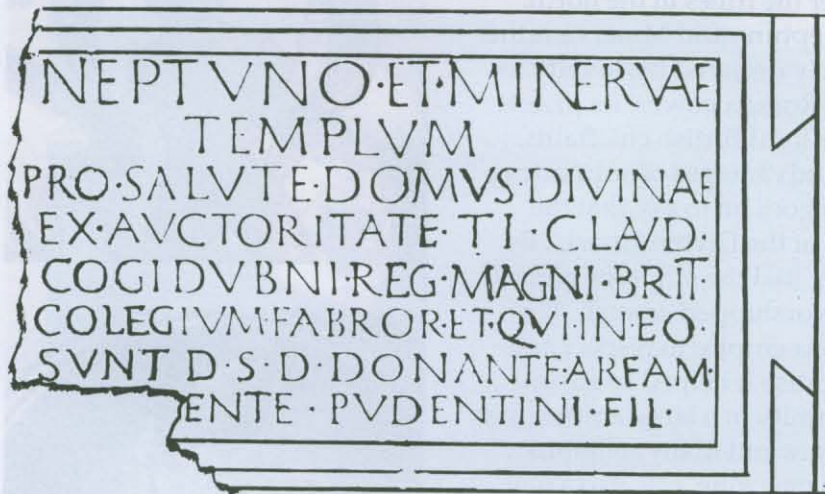
- 1 Complete each sentence with the right form of the noun and then translate.
 - a parvus puer ad effigiem dūxit. (Cogidubnum, Cogidubnō)
 - b ubi sacerdōtēs erant parātī, servī vīnum dedērunt. (rēgem, rēgī)
 - c Cogidubnus, quī prope effigiem stābat, ēlēgit. (victimam, victimae)
 - d Dumnorix nāvem ostendit. (amīcōs, amīcīs)
 - e facile erat Belimicum vidēre, quod ad saxum haerēbat.
(spectātōrēs, spectātōribus)
 - f postquam Dumnorix Belimicum superāvit, rēx ad aulam invitāvit.
(nautās, nautīs)

- 2 Translate the following sentences:
 - a difficile est Cogidubnō festīnāre, quod senex est.
 - b spectāculum vidēre nolumus.
 - c necesse est nōbīs fugere.
 - d pecūniam reddere dēbēs.
 - e Salvius est dominus; decōrum est Salviō servōs pūnīre.
 - f commodum est tibi in aulā manēre.
 - g victimam sacrificāre vīs?
 - h pugnāre nōn dēbēmus!



Aerial view of Chichester. The town walls and the intersecting main streets were laid out in Roman times.

Cogidubnus, king of the Regnenses



A drawing of what remains of the inscription. Some missing letters have been put in according to what is most likely to have been there. The photograph on page 43 shows part of the original stone. You can read the end of Cogidubnus' name. Notice there the neat carving of the well-proportioned letters.

To Neptune and Minerva, for the welfare of the Divine House, by the authority of Tiberius Claudius Cogidubnus, great king of the Britons, the Guild of Smiths and those in it gave this temple at their own expense. ...ens, son of Pudentinus, presented the forecourt.

A slab of stone inscribed with these Latin words was discovered near the Sussex coast in Chichester in 1723. When found, the slab was broken, but as soon as the pieces had been fitted together it was clear that this was the dedication stone of a temple built at the request of Cogidubnus in honour of Neptune, god of the sea, and Minerva, goddess of wisdom and craftsmanship. The elegant lettering, carved in the style of the first century AD, suggested the work of Roman craftsmen. Roman dedication stones are rather like the foundation stones which are laid nowadays when an important public building, such as a church, library or school, is being erected. They state the name of the person or group of people who gave the site and paid for the building. This particular building was paid for by the local **collēgium** or guild of smiths.

The inscription helps us to reconstruct part of Cogidubnus' life story. He was probably a member of the family that ruled the Atrebates. After the Roman invasion in AD 43 the Romans appointed him king of this tribe, which was renamed the Regnenses. Cogidubnus was a faithful supporter of the Romans, and the kingship may have been a reward from the Emperor Claudius for helping them at the time of the invasion. He was granted the privilege of Roman citizenship and allowed to add two of the emperor's names (Tiberius Claudius) to his own.

He became a 'client king', which meant that he ruled on behalf of the emperor and that he was responsible for collecting the taxes and keeping the peace in his part of Britain. In this way he played an important part in keeping the southern region loyal to Rome, while the legions advanced to conquer the tribes in the north.

By dedicating the new temple to Neptune and Minerva rather than British gods, Cogidubnus publicly declared his loyalty to Rome. The temple was a reminder of Roman power. Its priests may well have been selected from the local British chieftains, many of whom were quick to see the advantages of supporting the new government. The inscription goes on to say that the temple was intended 'for the welfare of the Divine House'. By saying this, Cogidubnus is suggesting that the emperor himself is related to the gods and should be worshipped as such. The Romans encouraged the people of their empire to respect and worship the emperor in this way, because it helped to ensure obedience and to build up a sense of unity in a large empire that contained many tribes, many languages and many religions.

The Regnenses received not only a new king, but also a new capital town, Noviomagus. It was founded near the Sussex coast, where Chichester now stands (see the photograph on page 54). Three miles (five kilometres) to the west is the modern village of Fishbourne, where the remains of a large Roman building were found in 1960 by a workman digging a trench. During the eight years of excavation that followed, the archaeologists discovered that this was no ordinary country house. It was a palace as large and splendid as the fashionable houses in Rome itself, with one set of rooms after another, arranged round a huge courtyard. No inscription has been found to tell us who owned the palace, but it was so large, so magnificent and so near to Noviomagus that Cogidubnus seems the likeliest owner.

The palace, however, was not the first building erected on the site. The remains of earlier wooden buildings were found underneath it. These go back to the time of the Roman invasion, or very shortly afterwards. One of them was a granary. Pieces of metal and a helmet were also found nearby. These discoveries indicate the presence of soldiers; they may have been the soldiers of the Second Legion, commanded by Vespasian, a brilliant young general who led the attack against the Durotriges in the south-west. There was a harbour nearby, where Roman supply ships tied up. It is therefore likely that the Romans first used Fishbourne as a military port and depot where Vespasian assembled his troops.

In AD 69, Vespasian himself became emperor. A few years later, work began on the building of the palace at Fishbourne. Perhaps Vespasian was remembering the loyalty of Cogidubnus and was now presenting him with the palace in return for his continued support of the Romans.



As well as his native Celtic gods, Cogidubnus worshipped Roman ones: (from top) Neptune and Minerva.



Model of military store buildings at Fishbourne.

Vespasian and the Durotriges



Vespasian (inset) found the Durotriges defended by hill forts surrounded by huge banks and ditches, like Maiden Castle (above). Roundhouses filled the space inside the ditches. After the Roman victory, the defenders were buried by the fort entrance (left).



At Hod Hill, the Second Legion built a camp in the corner of the British hill fort.

Vocabulary checklist 15

agmen	column (of men), procession	lītus	sea-shore
alius	other, another	mare	sea
aqua	water	miser	miserable, wretched
claudō, claudere, clausī	shut, block	nauta	sailor
commodus	convenient	prīnceps	chief, chieftain
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī	owe, ought	quī	who
equus	horse	redeō, redire, rediī	return, go back
etiam	even	sacerdōs	priest
impediō, impedire, impedivī	delay, hinder	teneō, tenere, tenuī	hold
lectus	couch	unda	wave
lentē	slowly	vincō, vincere, vīcī	win



A Roman arrowhead was found in the spine of one of the defenders of Maiden Castle.



IN AULA
STAGE 16



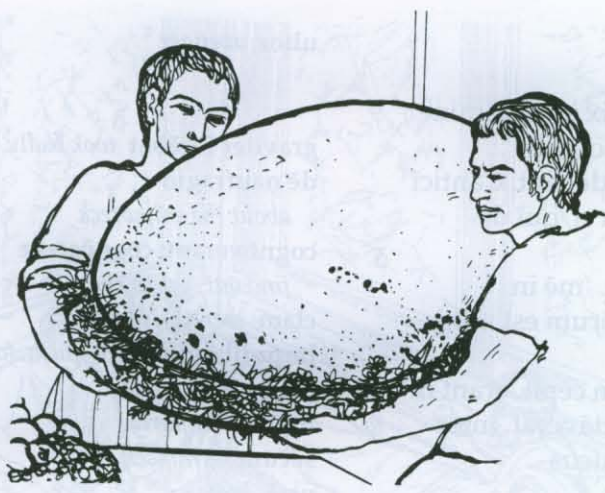
- 1 Cogidubnus Quīntum per aulam dūcēbat. in aulā erant multae pictūrae, quās pictor Graecus pīnixerat.



- 2 rēx iuvenem in hortum dūxit. in hortō erant multī flōrēs, quōs Cogidubnus ex Italiā importāverat.



- 3 tum ad ātrium vēnerunt. in mediō ātriō erat fōns marmoreus, quī aquam effundēbat.



4 rēx et hospitēs in aulā cēnābant. cēna, quam coquī Graecī parāverant, optima erat. servī magnum ōvum in mēnsam posuērunt.



5 ex ōvō, quod servī in mēnsam posuerant, apparuit saltātrīx.



6 tum pūmiliōnēs, quōs rēx in Italiā ēmerat, intrāvērunt. pūmiliōnēs pilās iactābant.

Belimicus ultor

Belimicus, princeps Canticus, postquam Dumnorix in certamine nāvālī vīcit, rem graviter ferēbat. irātissimus erat. omnēs hospitēs, quōs rēx ad aulam invitāverat, eum dēridēbant. Cantici quoque eum dēridēbant et vituperābant. etiam servī, quī dē naufragiō cognōverant, clam rīdēbant.

‘iste Dumnorix mē dēcēpit’, Belimicus sibi dixit. ‘mē in scopulum impulit et praemium iniūstē cēpit. decōrum est mihi eum pūnīre.’

Belimicus sēcum cōgitāvit et cōnsilium callidum cēpit. erant in aulā multae bēstiae, quās rēx ē multīs terrīs importāverat. inter hās bēstiās erat ursā ingēns, quam servus Germānicus custōdiēbat. Belimicus ad hunc servum adiit.

‘hoc animal est magnificum’, inquit. ‘mē valdē dēlectat. ursam tractāre volō; eam nōn timeō.’

itaque princeps ad ursam cotīdiē veniēbat; ursae cibum et aquam dabat. paulātīm ursam mānsuētā fēcit. tandem sōlus ursam tractāre potuit.

mox Cogidubnus cēnam et spectāculum nūntiāvit. amicōs ad aulam invitāvit. Belimicus statīm ad servum Germānicum contendit.

‘rēx hodiē spectāculum dat’, inquit. ‘hodiē hanc ursam in aulam dūcere volō. nunc eam tractāre possum. hospitibus eam ostendere volō.’

servus invitus cōnsēnsit. Belimicus cachinnāns sibi dixit, ‘parātus sum. nunc Dumnorigem pūnīre possum.’

ultor *avenger*

graviter ferēbat *took badly*
dē naufragiō

about the shipwreck

5 cognōverant: cognōscere
find out, get to know

clam *secretly, in private*

impulit: impellere *push, force*

praemium *prize*

10 iniūstē *unfairly*

sēcum *to himself*

ursa *bear*

Germānicus *German*

adiit: adīre *approach, go up to*

15 tractāre *handle*

paulātīm *gradually*

mānsuētā *tame*

20

25



pūmilīō



ursa



saltātrīx



Salvius et Quīntus prope
rēgem recumbēbant.

rēx spectāculum dat

I

rēx cum multīs hospitibus in aulā cēnābat. Salvius et Quīntus prope rēgem recumbēbant. Britannī cibum laudābant, Rōmānī vīnum. omnēs hospitēs rēgī grātiās agēbant.

subitō Belimicus tardus intrāvit.

‘ecce! naufragus noster intrat’, clāmāvit Dumnorix. ‘num tū aliam nāvem amīsisit?’

cēterī Belimicum dērisērunt et Dumnorigī plausērunt. Belimicus tamen Dumnorigī nihil respondit, sed tacitus cōnsēdit.

rēx hospitibus suīs spectāculum nūntiāvit. statim pūmiliōnēs cum saltātrīcibus intrāvērunt et hospitēs dēlectāvērunt. deinde, ubi rēx eis signum dedit, omnēs exiērunt. Salvius, quem pūmiliōnēs nōn dēlectāverant, clāmāvit,

‘haec cēna est bona. numquam cēnam meliōrem cōsūmpsī. sed ursam, quae saltat, vidēre volō. illa ursā mē multō magis dēlectat quam pūmiliōnēs et saltātrīcēs.’

tardus late

5 naufragus *shipwrecked sailor*

tacitus silent, in silence

cōnsēdit: cōnsīdere sit down

10 pūmiliōnēs: pūmiliō dwarf

cum saltātrīcibus

with dancing-girls

15 saltat: saltāre dance

multō magis much more

Belimicus II

When you have read this part of the story, answer the questions on page 65.

rēx servīs signum dedit. servus Germānicus, quī hoc signum exspectābat, statim cum ursā prōcessit et hospitibus eam ostendit.

Belimicus, simulatque hoc vīdit, surrēxit, et ad medium triclinium contendit.

'mī Dumnorix!' clāmāvit. 'facile est tibi iocōs facere. sed ursam tractāre nōn audēs! ego nōn timeō. ego, quem tū dērīdēs, ursam tractāre audeō.'

omnēs Belimicum spectābant attonitī. Belimicus, quī servum iam dīmīserat, ursam ad Dumnorigem dūxit.

'nōnne tū quoque ursam tractāre vīs?' rogāvit īsolēns. 'nōnne tū hospitibus spectāculum dare vīs?'

Dumnorix impavidus statim surrēxit et Belimicum dērīsīt.

'facile est mihi', inquit, 'hanc ursam superāre. tē quoque, homuncule, superāre possum.'

tum cēterī, quī anteā timuerant, valdē cachinnāvērunt.

Belimicus, ubi cachinnōs audīvit, furēns ursam pulsāvit, et eam ad Dumnorigem impulit. subitō ursā saeva sē vertit, et Belimicum ferōciter percussit. tum prīncipēs perterritī clāmōrem magnum sustulērunt et ad iānuās quam celerrimē cucurrērunt. etiam inter sē pugnābant, quod exīre nōn poterant. ursā, quam hic clāmōr terruerat, ad lectum cucurrit, ubi rēx sedēbat.

rēx tamen, quod claudicābat, effugere nōn poterat. Dumnorix in ursam frūstrā sē coniēcīt. Salvius immōtus stābat. sed Quīntus hastam, quam servus Germānicus tenēbat, rapuit. hastam celeriter ēmīsīt et bēstiam saevam trānsfīxit. illa dēcidit mortua.

5

iocōs: iocus *joke*
audēs: audēre *dare*

10

15

homuncule: homunculus
little man

cachinnāvērunt: cachinnāre
roar with laughter

cachinnōs: cachinnus *laughter*

20

furēns *furious, in a rage*
saeva *savage*

sē vertit: sē vertere *turn round*

25

coniēcīt: conicere *hurl, throw*
immōtus *still, motionless*

hastam: hasta *spear*

trānsfīxit: trānsfīgere *pierce*

Questions

	Marks
1 What did the German slave do at the king's signal?	2
2 What boast did Belimicus make (lines 7–8)? How did he show in lines 9–10 that he meant what he said?	2
3 What two challenges did Belimicus make to Dumnorix (lines 11–12)?	2
4 Look at lines 14–15. What two things did Dumnorix say that showed he was impavidus (line 13)?	2
5 What did Belimicus do when he heard the guests laughing at him (lines 17–18)?	2
6 What unexpected effect did this have on the bear? Give two details.	2
7 perterriti . How did the chieftains show that they were terrified (lines 19–20)?	2
8 Why did the guests fight among themselves?	1
9 Why did the bear run towards the king's couch?	1
10 Why could the king not escape?	1
11 In lines 23–6 how did each of the following people react?	
a Dumnorix	1
b Salvius	1
c Quintus	3
12 What did their reactions show about each of their characters?	3
	TOTAL 25



Exotic animals and birds were collected from Africa and Asia and other parts of the ancient world. Some animals were destined for collections like that held by King Cogidubnus; others ended up being hunted and killed in the amphitheatre. This mosaic shows two ostriches being carried up the gangplank of a ship.

About the language: pluperfect tense

- 1 In this Stage, you have met examples of the **pluperfect** tense. They looked like this:

in aulā erat ursa ingēns, quam rēx ex Italiā **importāverat**.
*In the palace was a huge bear, which the king **had imported** from Italy.*

sacerdōtēs, quī ad āram **prōcesserant**, victimās sacrificāvērunt.
*The priests, who **had advanced** to the altar, sacrificed the victims.*

- 2 The complete pluperfect tense is as follows:

portāveram	<i>I had carried</i>	portāverāmus	<i>we had carried</i>
portāverās	<i>you (singular) had carried</i>	portāverātis	<i>you (plural) had carried</i>
portāverat	<i>s/he had carried</i>	portāverant	<i>they had carried</i>

- 3 Further examples:

- a Rūfilla ancillās, quae cubiculum parāverant, laudāvit.
- b in ātriō sedēbant hospitēs, quōs rēx ad aulam invitāverat.
- c agricola nōs laudāvit, quod per tōtum diem labōrāverāmus.
- d Belimicus, quī nāvem amiserat, irātissimus erat.
- e Salvius mē pūnīvit, quod ē villā fūgeram.

- 4 Look at the differences between the present, perfect and pluperfect tenses:

	PRESENT	PERFECT	PLUPERFECT
<i>first conjugation</i>	portat <i>s/he carries</i>	portāvit <i>s/he carried</i>	portāverat <i>s/he had carried</i>
<i>second conjugation</i>	docet <i>s/he teaches</i>	docuit <i>s/he taught</i>	docuerat <i>s/he had taught</i>
<i>third conjugation</i>	trahit <i>s/he drags</i>	trāxit <i>s/he dragged</i>	trāxerat <i>s/he had dragged</i>
<i>fourth conjugation</i>	audit <i>s/he hears</i>	audīvit <i>s/he heard</i>	audīverat <i>s/he had heard</i>

- 5 Translate these further examples of third conjugation verbs.

- a discēdit discessit discesserat
- b scribit scripsit scripserat
- c facit fēcit fēcerat

Quīntus dē sē

postrīdiē Quīntus per hortum cum rēge ambulābat, flōrēsque variōs spectābat. deinde rēx

‘quō modō’, inquit, ‘ex urbe Pompēiīs effūgistī? paterne et māter superfuērunt?’

Quīntus trīstis

‘periit pater’, inquit. ‘māter quoque in urbe periit. ego et ūnus servus superfuimus. ad urbem Neāpolim vix effūgimus. ibi servum, quī tam fortis et tam fidēlis fuerat, liberāvī.’

‘quid deinde fēcistī?’ inquit rēx. ‘pecūniam habēbās?’

‘omnēs villās, quās pater in Campāniā possēderat, vēndidī. ita multam pecūniam comparāvī. tum ex Italiā discēdere voluī, quod trīstissimus eram. ego igitur et libertus meus nāvem cōnscendimus.

prīmō ad Graeciam vēnimus et in urbe Athēnīs habitābāmus. haec urbs erat pulcherrima, sed cīvēs turbulentī. multī philosophī, quī forum cotīdiē frequentābant, contrōversiās inter sē habēbant.

post paucōs mēnsēs, aliās urbēs vidēre voluimus. ad Aegyptum igitur nāvigāvimus, et mox ad urbem Alexandriām advēnimus.’

variōs: varius *different*

quō modō *how*

superfuērunt: superesse
survive

5

Neāpolim: Neāpolis *Naples*
vix *with difficulty*

tam *so*

fuerat *had been*

possēderat: possidēre *possess*

comparāvī: comparāre *obtain*

cōnscendimus: cōnscendere
embark on, go on board

15

prīmō *first*

Athēnīs: Athēnae *Athens*

frequentābant: frequentāre
crowd

mēnsēs: mēnsis *month*

20

Aegyptum: Aegyptus *Egypt*



The Acropolis (or citadel) of Athens. The prominent building is the Parthenon, the temple of Athena (whom the Romans called Minerva).

Practising the language

- 1 Complete the verb in each relative clause by adding the right pluperfect ending. Then translate the sentence.

For example: *fabrī, quōs imperātor mīs., aulam aedificāvērunt.*
fabrī, quōs imperātor mīserat, aulam aedificāvērunt.
The craftsmen, whom the emperor had sent, built the palace.

- a *rēx, quī multōs hospitēs invītāv., eīs cēnam optimam dedit.*
b *prīncipēs, quī ex ātriō discess., in āream prōcessērunt.*
c *dōnum, quod ego rēgī ded., pretiōsum erat.*
d *ancillae, quae ad aulam vēr., hospitēs dēlectāvērunt.*
e *nōs, quī Belimicum cōspex., valdē rīsimus.*
f *tū, quī ursam tractāv., nōn timēbās.*

The palace at Fishbourne

When the Roman soldiers moved on from Fishbourne, they left behind them a few buildings, some roads and a harbour. During the next thirty years many improvements were made. The roads were resurfaced and the drainage of this low-lying, rather marshy site was improved. The harbour was developed, and merchant ships called regularly. Work was begun on a guest house, and a fine new villa with a set of baths was built in the late sixties. This could have been a residence Cogidubnus built for himself on the outskirts of his new capital town.

But in about AD 75 everything changed. A vast area was cleared and levelled and the villa and baths became part of the south-east corner of a huge new building.

Specialist craftsmen were brought in from Italy: makers of mosaics, marble-workers, plasterers to make friezes, painters, carpenters, ironsmiths, hydraulic engineers to construct the fountains, and many others. All the construction and detailed manufacture was carried out on the site itself, where the builders lived and worked for many years. Many traces of the craftsmen's activity have been found. The floor of the area used by the stonemasons was littered with fragments of marble and coloured stone which had been imported from quarries in Italy, the Greek island of Scyros, Asia Minor and elsewhere. In another area were signs of iron-working where the smiths had manufactured door-hinges, handles and bolts.



The bath house (with the white roof) was incorporated into the later palace.

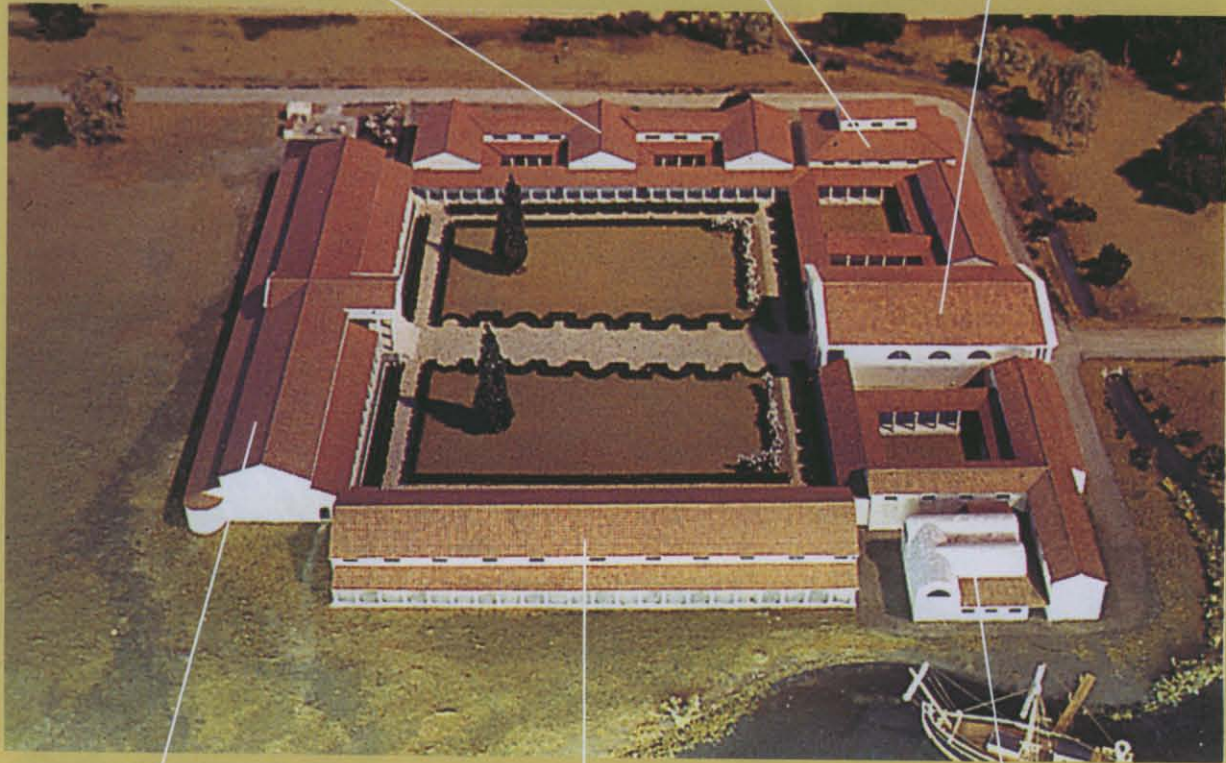
A Roman palace for a British king

The palace at Fishbourne was laid out in four long wings around a central garden.

The north wing contained three suites of rooms arranged around two internal courtyards where important guests could stay.

The hall was possibly used for religious purposes.

Visitors entered the palace through the entrance hall in the middle of the east wing. Some other rooms in this wing may have provided guest accommodation for less important visitors.

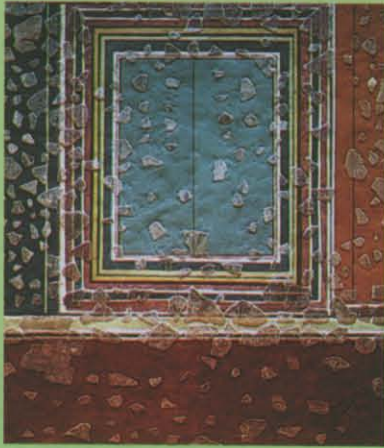


The west wing was built on a platform 1.5 metres higher than the rest of the palace. In the centre stood the audience chamber where the king received his subjects and interviewed officials; the other rooms may have been used as offices.

Today the south wing lies under a modern road and houses, but it may have been the accommodation for King Cogidubnus and his family, with a garden leading down from the verandah to the sea.

The bath house in the south-east corner is older than the rest of the building.

Elegant walls



The Romans' decorative schemes have been reconstructed from fragments.



One fragment of painted wall plaster from Fishbourne (left) is similar in style to a painting from Stabiae (right).



A frieze made of fine plaster and some of the marble pieces that decorated the walls (right).





Fashionable floors

Above and right: Cogidubnus' floors were covered with elegant black-and-white mosaics in geometric patterns. Try drawing the different shapes and work out how they fit together.



This floor, laid by a later owner, had a more complicated pattern. In the centre, Cupid rides a dolphin, and legendary sea creatures swim in the semi-circular spaces around.

The palace gardens

Like the palace, the garden was planned, laid out and decorated in the most fashionable Italian style. Whoever the owner was, he wanted his palace in Britain to look as Roman as possible.

The open area, which measured approximately 90 by 70 metres (100 by 80 yards), was laid out as a formal garden. The two lawns were not rolled and mown like a modern lawn, but the grass was kept short and tidy. Along the edges of the lawns archaeologists have found deep bedding trenches filled with a mixture of loam and crushed chalk where shrubs and flowers such as roses, flowering trees, box, rosemary, lilies and acanthus would probably have been planted.



Box hedges have been planted exactly where the Roman bedding trenches were found.



The reconstruction of the garden at Fishbourne features plants which Cogidubnus might have had in his garden. Clockwise from top left: acanthus, lily, rose, hyssop, grapevine.

A line of holes across the eastern side of the garden shows where wooden poles stood to support a trellis for climbing plants. These may have been rambler roses: the Romans were fond of roses and were good at growing them.

A broad path, 12 metres wide and surfaced with stone chippings, ran through the middle of the garden leading from the entrance hall to the audience chamber. Paths ran round the outside of the lawns, and a system of underground pipes brought water to the fountains which stood at intervals along the paths. Small marble and bronze statues were placed here and there to provide further decoration.



A slave working in the potting shed: a reconstruction at Fishbourne today.

Vocabulary checklist 16

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī	build	nōnne?	surely?
auxilium	help	pereō, perīre, periī	die, perish
bonus	good	pōnō, pōnere, posuī	place, put
cōnsentiō, cōnsentīre, cōnsēnsī	agree	postrīdiē	on the next day
cōnsilium	plan, idea	pūniō, pūnīre, pūnivī	punish
deinde	then	simulac, simulatque	as soon as
dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī	delight	summus	highest, greatest, top
effugiō, effugere, effūgī	escape	tollō, tollere, sustulī	raise, lift up
flōs	flower	vertō, vertere, vertī	turn
imperātor	emperor		
inter	among		
ita	in this way		
melior	better		
nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī	sail		

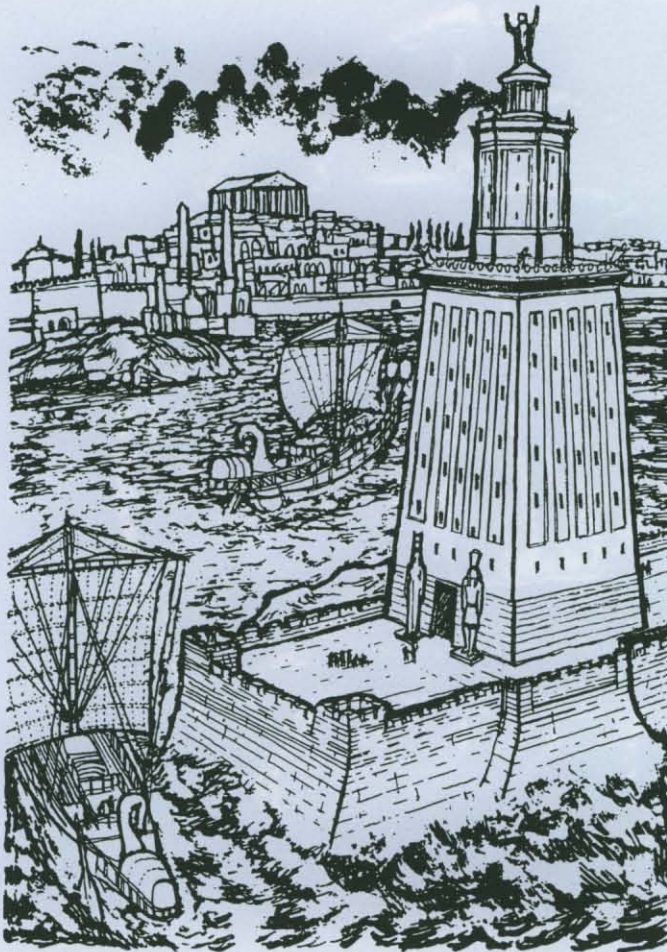


A detail from the Cupid and dolphin mosaic pictured on page 71, showing a sea-panther.



ALEXANDRIA

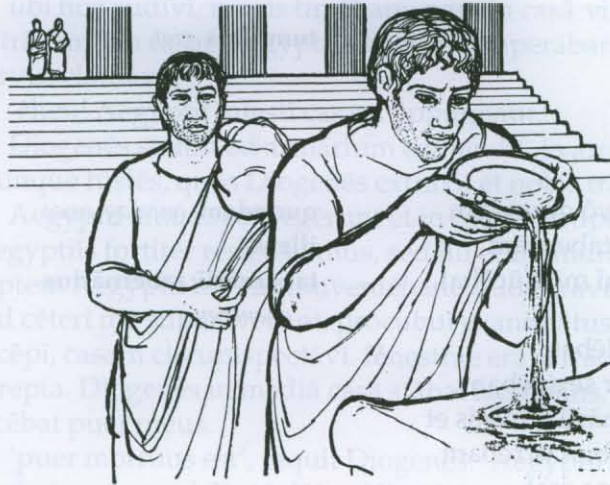
STAGE 17



- 1 Alexandria magnum portum habet. prope portum est insula. facile est navibus ad portum pervenire, quod in hac insula est pharus ingens. multae nave in portu Alexandriae sunt.



- 2 Alexandria est urbs turbulenta. ingens turba semper urbem complet. multi mercatores per vias ambulant. multi servi per urbem currunt. multi milites per vias urbis procedunt. milites Romani urbem custodiunt.



- 3 postquam ad urbem pervēnimus, templum vīdimus. ad hoc templum, quod Augustus Caesar aedificāverat, festināvīmus. prō templō Caesaris erat āra. ego vīnum in āram fūdī.



- 4 prope hanc urbem habitābat Barbillus, vir dīves. Barbillus negōtium cum patre meō saepe agēbat. villam splendidam habēbat. ad villam Barbilli mox pervēnī. facile erat mihi villam invenīre, quod Barbillus erat vir nōtissimus.



- 5 Barbillus multōs servōs habēbat, ego nūllōs.
 'decōrum est tibi servum Aegyptium habēre', inquit Barbillus.
 inter servōs Barbilli erat puer Aegyptius. Barbillus, vir benignus, mihi hunc puerum dedit.

tumultus

tumultus riot

I

in villā Barbillī diū habitābam. ad urbem cum servō quondam contendī, quod Clēmentem vīsītāre volēbam. ille tabernam prope portum Alexandriāe possidēbat. servus, quī mē dūcēbat, erat puer Aegyptius.

in urbe erat ingēns multitudō, quae viās complēbat. mercātōrēs per viās ambulābant et negōtium inter sē agēbant. fēminae et ancillae tabernās frequentābant; tabernāriī fēminīs et ancillīs stolās ostendēbant. multī servī per viās urbis currēbant. difficile erat nōbīs per viās ambulāre, quod maxima erat multitudō. tandem ad portum Alexandriāe pervēnimus. plūrimī Aegyptiī aderant, sed nūllōs Graecōs vidēre poterāmus. puer, postquam hoc sēnsit, anxius

‘melius est nōbīs’, inquit, ‘ad villam Barbillī revenīre. ad tabernam Clēmentis ire nōn possumus. viae sunt periculōsae, quod Aegyptiī irātī sunt. omnēs Graecī ex hāc parte urbis fūgerunt.’

‘minimē!’ puerō respondi. ‘quamquam Aegyptiī sunt irātī, ad villam redire nōlō. longum iter iam fēcimus. paene ad tabernam Clēmentis pervēnimus. necesse est nōbīs cautē prōcēdere.’

quondam one day, once

ille he

tabernāriī: tabernārius

shopkeeper

5

10

plūrimī very many

sēnsit: sentīre notice

melius est it would be better

15

parte: pars part

II

When you have read this part of the story, answer the questions on page 79.

itaque ad tabernam Clēmentis contendimus, sed in viā plūrimī Aegyptiī nōbīs obstābant. in multitudīne Aegyptiōrum erat senex, quī Graecōs Rōmānōsque vituperābat. omnēs eum intentē audiēbant.

ubi hoc vīdī, sollicitus eram. puer Aegyptius, quī sollicitūdīnem meam sēnserat, mē ad casam proximam dūxit.

‘domine, in hāc casā habitat faber, quī Barbillum bene nōvit. necesse est nōbīs casam intrāre et periculūm vītāre.’

faber per fenestram casae forte spectābat. ubi puerum agnōvit, nōs in casam suam libenter accēpit.

postquam casam intrāvimus, susurrāvī,

‘quis est hic faber?’

‘est Diogenēs, faber Graecus’, respondit puer.

nōbīs obstābant

were blocking our way, were obstructing us

sollicitūdīnem: sollicitūdō anxiety

casam: casa small house

nōvit knows

periculūm danger

fenestram: fenestra window

forte by chance

accēpit: accipere

take in, receive

5

10

ubi hoc audīvī, magis timēbam. nam in casā virī Graecī eram; extrā iānuam casae Aegyptiī Graecōs vituperābant. subitō servus clāmāvit,

‘ēheu! Aegyptiī infestī casam oppugnant.’

Diogenēs statim ad armārium contendit. in armāriō erant quīnque fūstēs, quōs Diogenēs extrāxit et nōbīs trādīdit.

Aegyptiī iānuam effrēgērunt et in casam irrūpērunt. nōs Aegyptiīs fortiter resistēbāmus, sed illī erant multī, nōs paucī. septem Aegyptiī mē circumveniēbant. duōs graviter vulnerāvī, sed cēteri mē superāvērunt. prōcubuī exanimātus. ubi animum recēpī, casam circumspēctāvī. fenestrae erant frāctae, casa dīrepta. Diogenēs in mediā casā stābat lacrimāns. prope mē iacēbat puer meus.

‘puer mortuus est’, inquit Diogenēs. ‘Aegyptiī eum necāvērunt, quod ille tē dēfendēbat.’

	magis <i>more</i>
15	extrā iānuam <i>outside the door</i>
	infestī: infestus <i>hostile</i>
	oppugnant: oppugnāre <i>attack</i>
	effrēgērunt: effringere <i>break down</i>
20	irrūpērunt: irrumpere <i>burst in</i>
	septem <i>seven</i>
	circumveniēbant:
	circumvenīre <i>surround</i>
	animum recēpī: animum
25	recipere <i>recover consciousness</i>
	dīrepta <i>pulled apart, ransacked</i>
	dēfendēbat: dēfendere <i>defend</i>

Questions

Marks

1	What was the old man doing? What was the crowd’s reaction to him (lines 2–4)?	2
2	ubi hoc vidī, sollicitus eram (line 5). Why do you think Quintus was worried?	1
3	puer...mē ad casam proximam dūxit (lines 5–7). Explain why the boy did this (lines 7–8).	2
4	Why were Quintus and the boy taken into the house (lines 9–10)?	2
5	magis timēbam (line 14). Why was Quintus more frightened now?	2
6	How did Diogenes prepare for the Egyptians’ attack on the house?	2
7	How did the Egyptians get into the house (line 20)?	1
8	Why was it difficult to resist the Egyptians (lines 20–1)?	2
9	Describe the part Quintus played in the fight (lines 22–3).	3
10	Who was killed? Why do you think he was killed and not anyone else?	1+2
		<hr/>
TOTAL		20

About the language: genitive case

1 Study the following sentences:

ad portum **Alexandriae** mox pervēnimus.
We soon arrived at the harbour of Alexandria.

in villā **Barbilli** erant multī servī.
In the house of Barbillus were many slaves.

mīlitēs Rōmānī per viās **urbis** prōcēdēbant.
Roman soldiers were advancing through the streets of the city.

in multitudīne **Aegyptiōrum** erat senex.
In the crowd of Egyptians was an old man.

The words in **bold type** are in the **genitive case**.

2 Compare the nominative singular with the genitive singular and genitive plural in each declension:

	<i>first declension</i>	<i>second declension</i>	<i>third declension</i>	
<i>nominative singular</i>	puella	servus	leō	cīvis
<i>genitive singular</i>	puellae	servī	leōnis	cīvis
<i>genitive plural</i>	puellārum	servōrum	leōnum	cīvium

3 Further examples:

- multī servī in viā clāmābant. Quīntus per multitudīnem servōrum contendit.
- Aegyptiī in casam fabrī ruērunt.
- nūllī Graecī in illā parte urbis habitābant.
- fēmina dīves magnum fundum habēbat. multī Aegyptiī in fundō fēminae labōrābant.
- cīvēs viās complēbant. puer Quīntum per turbam cīvium dūxit.
- mercātor togās in tabernā vēndēbat. iuvenēs et puerī ad tabernam mercātōris contendērunt.



Egypt, especially Alexandria, had a very mixed population. Many were Greeks like Artemidorus in the portrait on the left; the unnamed man below looks Roman. These pictures were found elsewhere in Egypt, but the sculpture of an African man (right) was found in Alexandria itself.



ad templum

per viās urbis quondam cum Barbillō ibam. in multitudīne, quae viās complēbat, Aegyptiōs, Graecōs, Iūdaeōs, Syrōs vīdī. subitō vir quīdam nōbīs appropinquāvit. Barbillus, simulatque eum cōspexit, magnum gemitum dedit.

Barbillus: ēheu! quam miserī sumus! ecce Plancus, vir doctissimus, quī numquam tacet! semper dē templis deōrum et dē aliīs monumentis garrīre vult.

Plancus: salvē, mī dulcissime! quid hodiē agis? quō contendis?

Barbillus: (*invītus*) ad templum.

Plancus: ad templum Augustī?

Barbillus: minimē, ad templum Serāpidis īmus. nunc festināre dēbēmus, quod iter longum est. nōnne tū negōtium cum aliīs mercātōribus agere dēbēs? valē!

Plancus: hodiē ōtiōsus sum. commodum est mihi ad templum Serāpidis ire. dē Serāpide vōbīs nārrāre possum. 15

(Plancus nōbīscum ībat garriēns. nōbīs dē omnibus monumentis nārrāre coepit.)

Barbillus: (*susurrāns*) amīcus noster loquācior est quam psittacus et obstinātor quam asinus. 20

Iūdaeōs: Iūdaeī Jews

Syrōs: Syrī Syrians

vir quīdam a certain man,
someone

5 gemitum: gemitus groan
doctissimus: doctus
learned, clever

monumentis: monumentum
monument

10 garrīre chatter, gossip
mī dulcissime my dear fellow
quid ... agis? how are you?

garriēns chattering

coepit began

susurrāns whispering

loquācior: loquāx talkative

psittacus parrot

obstinātor: obstinātus

20 obstinate, stubborn

Plancus: nunc ad templum Serāpidis advēnimus. spectāte templum! quam magnificum! spectāte cellam! statuam vīdistis, quae in cellā est? deus ibi cum magnā dignitāte sedet. in capite deī est canistrum. Serāpis enim est deus quī segetēs cūrat. opportunē hūc vēnimus. hōra quārta est. nunc sacerdotēs in ārā sacrificium facere solent.

(subitō tuba sonuit. sacerdotēs ē cellā templī ad āram prōcessērunt.)

sacerdōs: tacēte vōs omnēs, quī adestis! tacēte vōs, quī hoc sacrificium vidēre vultis!

(omnēs virī fēminaeque statim tacuērunt.)

Barbillus: *(rīdēns et susurrāns)* ehem! vidēsne Plancum? ubi sacerdōs silentium poposcit, etiam ille dēnique tacuit. mīrāculum est. deus nōs servāvit.

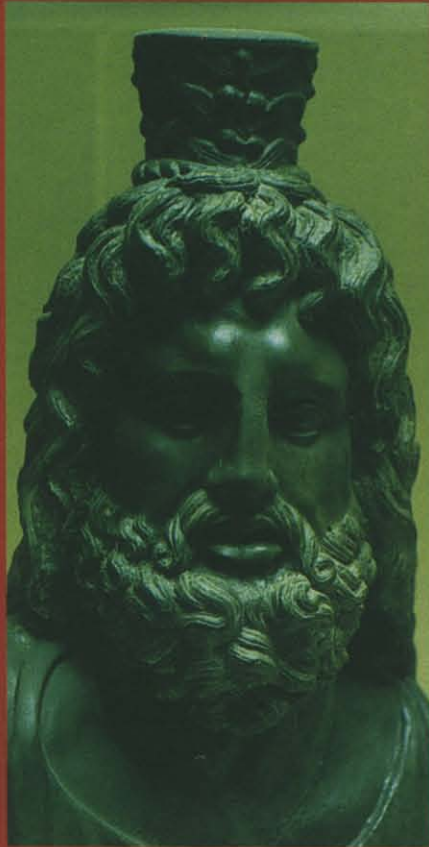
cellam: *cella* sanctuary
in capite *on the head*
canistrum *basket*
enim *for*
opportunē *just at the right time*
hōra *hour*
quārta *fourth*
ārā: *āra* altar
facere solent
are accustomed to make

25

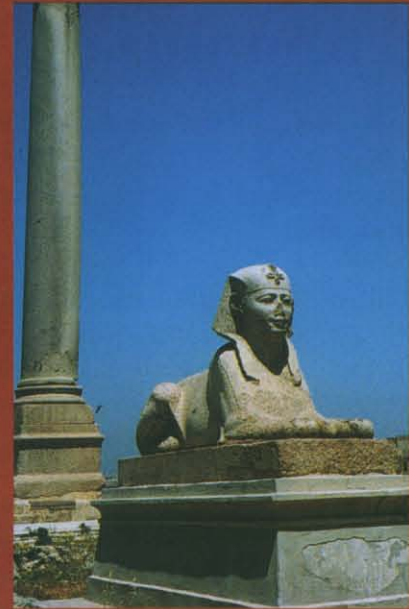
30

rīdēns *laughing, smiling*
ehem! *well, well!*
silentium *silence*
dēnique *at last, finally*
mīrāculum *miracle*

35



Portrait of a priest of Serapis.



This sphinx marks the site of the temple of Serapis.

Left: The god Serapis, with the corn measure on his head.

Practising the language

1 Complete each sentence with the right form of the noun and then translate.

- a in multitūdine stābat senex. (Aegyptiōrum, Aegyptiī)
- b faber per fenestram spectābat. (casārum, casae)
- c in viīs erant multī mercātōrēs. (urbis, urbium)
- d domina per turbam festināvit. (ancillae, ancillārum)
- e nōs ad templum Serāpidis pervēnimus. prō templō stābant multī cīvēs. (deī, deōrum)
- f mercātōrēs villās splendidās habēbant. in villis erant statuae pretiōsae. (mercātōris, mercātōrum)

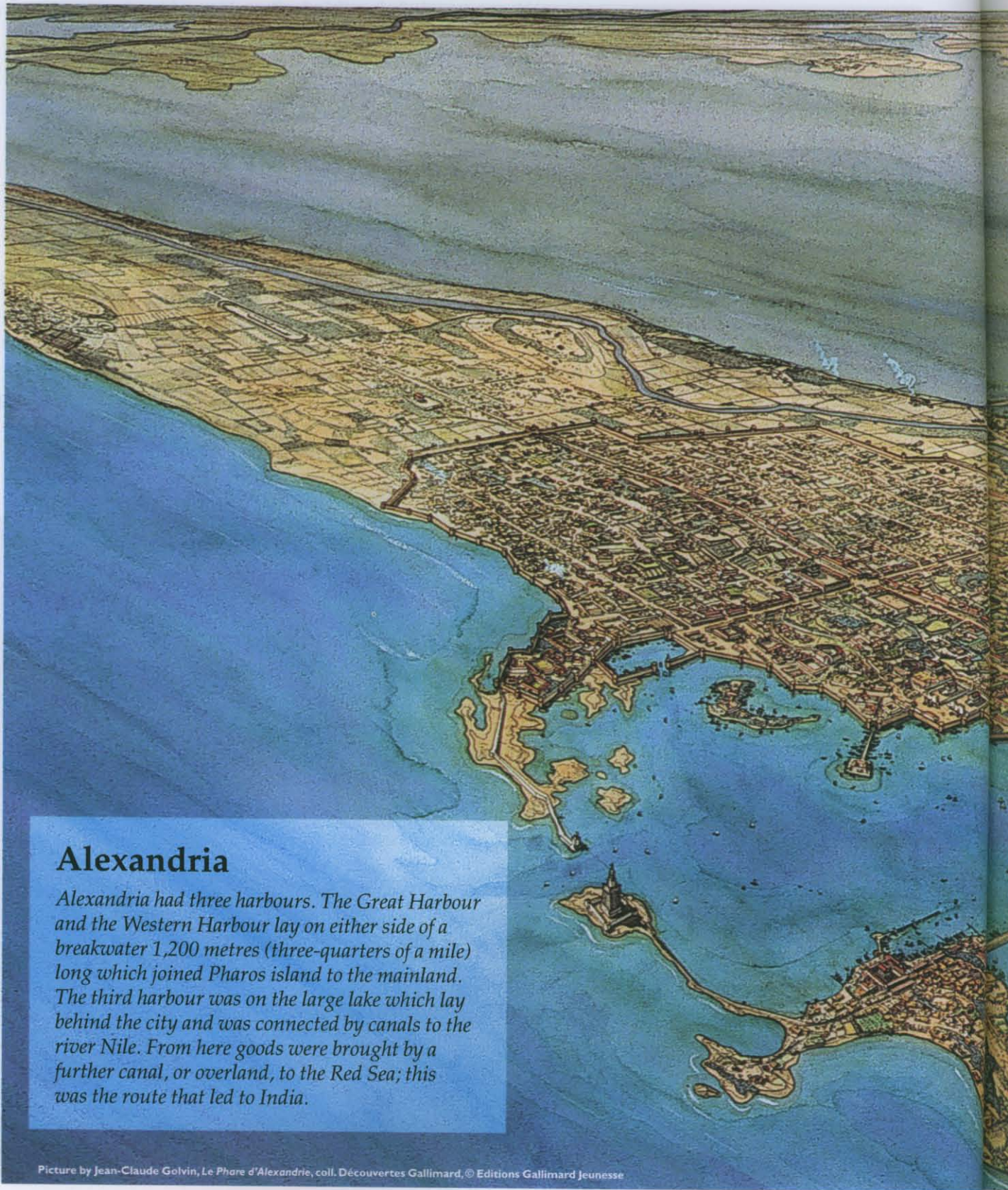
2 Complete each sentence with the right form of the verb and then translate.

- a ubi Diogenēs hoc dīxit, nōs casam (intrāvī, intrāvimus)
- b Aegyptiī tabernam oppugnāvērunt, ubi vōs templum (vīsītābās, vīsītābātis)
- c ego, ubi in urbe eram, tēcum negōtium (agēbam, agēbāmus)
- d tū senem, quī Rōmānōs vituperābat, (audīvistī, audīvistis)
- e nōs, quod sacerdotēs ad āram prōcēdēbant. (tacēbāmus, tacēbam)
- f vōs auxilium mihi semper (dabātis, dabās)
- g pestis es! togās sordidās mihi (vēndidistis, vēndidistī)
- h ad portum ambulābam. multōs militēs Rōmānōs (vidī, vidimus)

3 Complete each sentence with the right verb from the box below and then translate.

volō	volumus	possum	possumus
vīs	vultis	potes	potestis
vult	volunt	potest	possunt

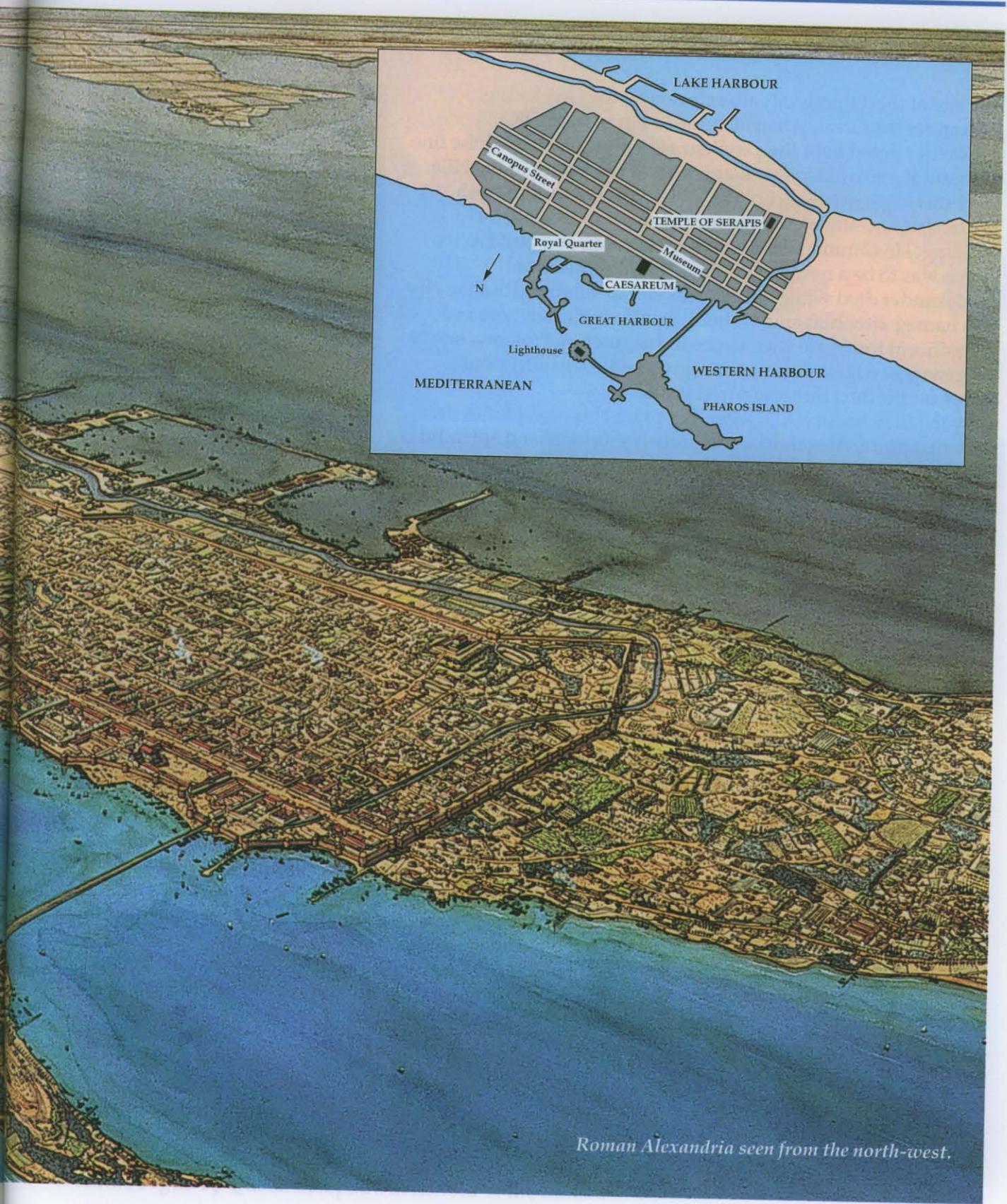
- a māne ad portum ambulāre soleō, quod nāvēs spectāre
- b mihi valdē placet puellam audire, quae suāviter cantāre
- c Barbille! nōnne dē monumentīs audire ?
- d iter longum iam fēcistis; ad villam hodiē pervenire nōn
- e multī virī fēminaeque ad templum contendunt, quod sacrificium vidēre
- f paucī sumus. Aegyptiōs superāre nōn
- g māter, quae filiō dōnum dare, togās in tabernā inspicit.
- h Aegyptiī fūstēs habent; Graecī eīs resistere nōn



Alexandria

Alexandria had three harbours. The Great Harbour and the Western Harbour lay on either side of a breakwater 1,200 metres (three-quarters of a mile) long which joined Pharos island to the mainland. The third harbour was on the large lake which lay behind the city and was connected by canals to the river Nile. From here goods were brought by a further canal, or overland, to the Red Sea; this was the route that led to India.

Picture by Jean-Claude Golvin, *Le Phare d'Alexandrie*, coll. Découvertes Gallimard, © Editions Gallimard Jeunesse



Roman Alexandria seen from the north-west.

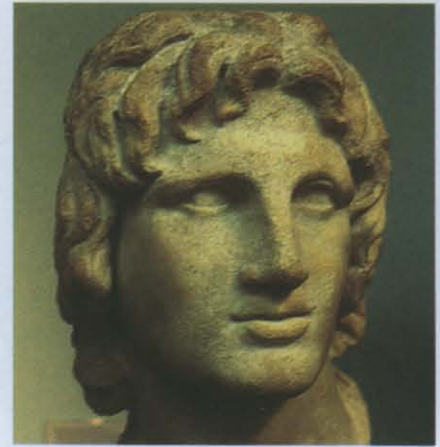
Alexandria

The site of this famous city was chosen by the Greek king, Alexander the Great, when he came to Egypt in 331 BC. Alexander noted both the excellent agricultural land and the fine harbour of a small fishing village west of the mouth of the Nile. Here there was good anchorage, a healthy climate and fresh water, and limestone quarries nearby to provide stone for building. He commanded his architect to plan and build a city which was to be a new centre of trade and civilisation.

Alexander died while the city was still developing, but the city was named after him and his body was later buried there in a magnificent tomb. He was succeeded as ruler by Ptolemy, one of his generals, whose descendants governed Alexandria and Egypt for the next three hundred years.

By the first century AD, when Egypt had become part of the Roman empire, Alexandria was probably as large and splendid as Rome itself; it was certainly the greatest city in the eastern part of the empire, with perhaps a million inhabitants. Much of its wealth and importance was due to its position. It stood at a meeting-place of great trade routes, and was therefore excellently placed for trading on a large scale. Merchants and businessmen were attracted to the city because it offered them safe harbours for their ships, a large number of dock-workers to handle their cargoes, huge warehouses for storage, and a busy market for buying and selling.

Into Alexandria came luxury goods such as bronze statues from Greece or fine Italian wines, and raw materials such as wood and marble to be used by craftsmen in the local workshops. Out to other countries went wheat in enormous quantities, papyrus, glassware and much else. A list in the *Red Sea Guide Book*, written by an Alexandrian merchant in the first century AD, gives some idea of the vast range of goods bought and sold in the city: 'clothes, cotton, skins, muslins, silks, brass, copper, iron, gold, silver, silver plate, tin, axes, adzes, glass,



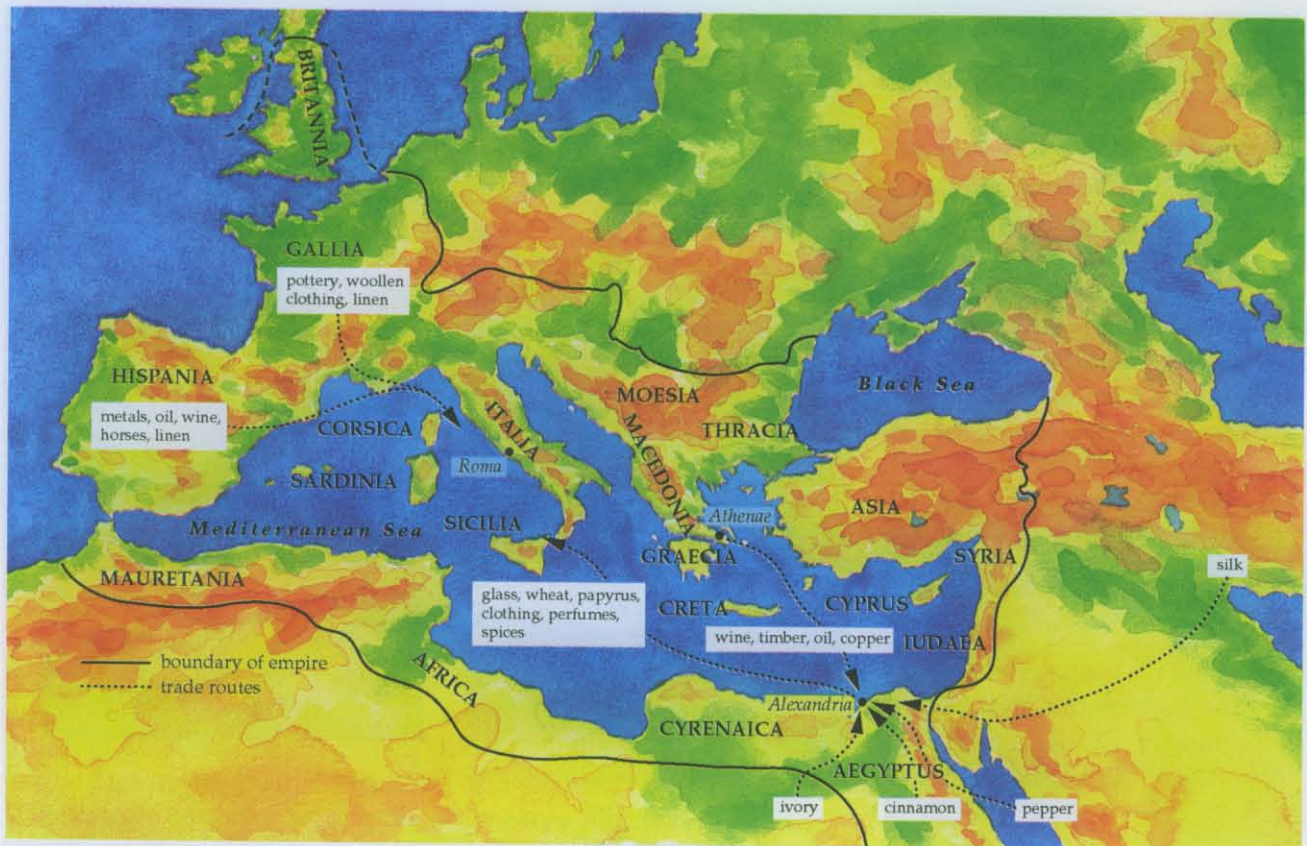
Alexander the Great.



Coin of Alexandria, showing a ship passing the lighthouse.



The harbour today.



ivory, tortoise shell, rhinoceros horn, wine, olive oil, sesame oil, rice, butter, honey, wheat, myrrh, frankincense, cinnamon, fragrant gums, papyrus.'

Travellers from Greece or Italy would approach Alexandria by sea. The first thing they would see, rising above the horizon, would be the huge lighthouse that stood on a little island called Pharos just outside the harbour. This lighthouse, which was itself called Pharos, was one of the seven wonders of the ancient world. It acted as a marker day and night for the thousands of ships that used the port each year.

Alexander's architect planned the city carefully, with its streets set out in a grid system, crossing each other at right angles as in many modern American cities. The main street, Canopus Street, was more than 30 metres (100 feet) wide, wider than any street in Rome and four times the size of any street that Quintus would have known in Pompeii. Some of the houses were several storeys high, and many of the public buildings were built of marble. By the Great Harbour was the Royal Quarter, an area of more than 260 hectares (one square mile) containing palaces, temples and gardens. West of the Royal Quarter was the Caesareum, where Quintus, in the paragraph on page 77, made his offering of wine. The Caesareum was a shrine begun by Queen Cleopatra in honour of the Roman

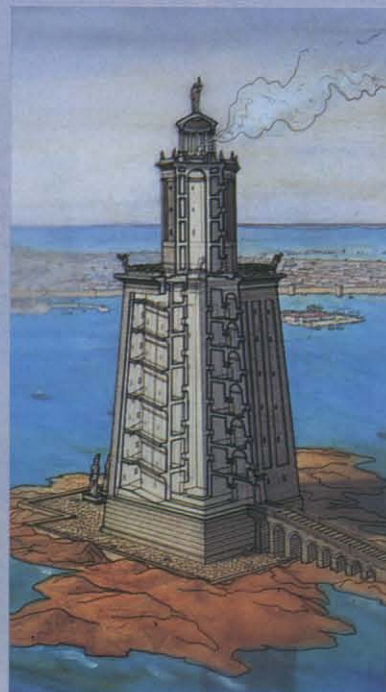
Alexandria and trade in the first century AD.

The Pharos

Right: Model of the Pharos based on evidence like the coin on page 86, with a cut-away drawing.

The Pharos was over 135 metres (440 feet) high, with a fire constantly alight at the top. A spiral ramp inside the lowest stage allowed fuel to be carried up by animals. Statues of Ptolemy II and his queen can be seen at the base of the lighthouse.

Below: A 15th-century fort was built on the ruins of the Pharos.



general Marcus Antonius and completed by the Emperor Augustus as a temple dedicated to himself. In the words of the Jewish writer Philo, it was 'wonderfully high and large, full of precious paintings and statues, and beautiful all over with gold and silver; it contains colonnades, libraries, courtyards and sacred groves, all made as skilfully as possible with no expense spared'.

In front of the Caesareum stood two obelisks, tall narrow pillars of granite, pointed at the top. They were brought from an

Photos pictures by Jean-Claude Golshin, Le Phare d'Alexandrie, coll. Découvertes Gallimard, © Editions Gallimard Jeunesse

ancient Egyptian temple and put in position by a Roman engineer in 13 BC. In the nineteenth century one was removed to London and placed on the embankment of the river Thames, and the other was taken to Central Park, New York. They are known as Cleopatra's Needles.

But Alexandria was more than a city of fine streets, glittering marble and busy trading; it was a centre of education and study. The university, known as the Museum and situated in the Royal Quarter, had the largest library in the ancient world with more than half a million volumes on its shelves. Professional scholars were employed to do research in a wide range of subjects – mathematics, astronomy, anatomy, geography, literature and languages. Here the first maps of the world were drawn, based on travellers' reports; here Euclid wrote his famous geometry textbook and Aristarchus put forward his theory that the Earth goes round the Sun.

Alexandria was a city of many different races, including Egyptians, Jews, Romans, Africans and Indians. But on the whole the people with most power and influence were the Greeks. They had planned the city and built it; they had ruled it before the Romans came and continued to play a part in running it under the Romans; theirs was the official language; they owned great wealth in Alexandria and enjoyed many privileges. This caused jealousy among the other races, and was one of the reasons why quarrels and riots frequently broke out. The Roman governor, or even the emperor himself, often had to step in and try to settle such disputes as fairly and peacefully as possible.

Right: *The Caesareum obelisks as they appeared at the end of the 18th century; in the bottom right hand corner you can see that one is lying on the ground, partially buried.*



Far right: *Cleopatra's Needle in London.*





After one violent riot involving the Jews, the Emperor Claudius included the following stern warning in a letter to the Alexandrians:

'Although I am very angry with those who stirred up the trouble, I am not going to enquire fully into who was responsible for the riot – I might have said, the war – with the Jews. But I tell you this, once and for all: if you do not stop quarrelling with each other, I shall be forced to show you what even a kind emperor can do when he has good reason to be angry.'

This mosaic floor comes from the dining-room of a rich Alexandrian. It shows the head of Medusa, which could turn those who looked at it to stone.

Underwater discoveries

Underwater excavations in the Great Harbour are now bringing much of the waterfront of ancient Alexandria back to life.



Top: A diver examining a sphinx underwater.

Above: Raising part of a statue of one of the Greek rulers of Egypt, possibly Ptolemy II. The Pharos was completed in his reign.

Right: Several parts of the statue have been found, enabling it to be rebuilt. The huge figure, wearing the traditional royal dress of the Pharaohs, probably stood at the foot of the great lighthouse.



Vocabulary checklist 17

Nouns in the checklists for Stages 17–20 are usually listed in the form of their nominative and genitive singular. Verbs are listed as before.

<i>ā, ab</i>	<i>from</i>	<i>īnsula, īnsulae</i>	<i>island</i>
<i>animus, animī</i>	<i>spirit, soul, mind</i>	<i>invītus, invīta, invītum</i>	<i>unwilling</i>
<i>appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī</i>	<i>approach, come near to</i>	<i>itaque</i>	<i>and so</i>
<i>āra, ārae</i>	<i>altar</i>	<i>maximus</i>	<i>very big</i>
<i>bene</i>	<i>well</i>	<i>negōtium, negōtīi</i>	<i>business</i>
<i>benignus</i>	<i>kind</i>	<i>numquam</i>	<i>never</i>
<i>diū</i>	<i>for a long time</i>	<i>paucī</i>	<i>few, a few</i>
<i>faber, fabrī</i>	<i>craftsman</i>	<i>pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī</i>	<i>reach, arrive at</i>
<i>facilis</i>	<i>easy</i>	<i>quondam</i>	<i>one day, once</i>
<i>graviter</i>	<i>seriously</i>	<i>recipiō, recipere, recēpī</i>	<i>recover, take back</i>
<i>hūc</i>	<i>here, to this place</i>	<i>resistō, resistere, restitī</i>	<i>resist</i>

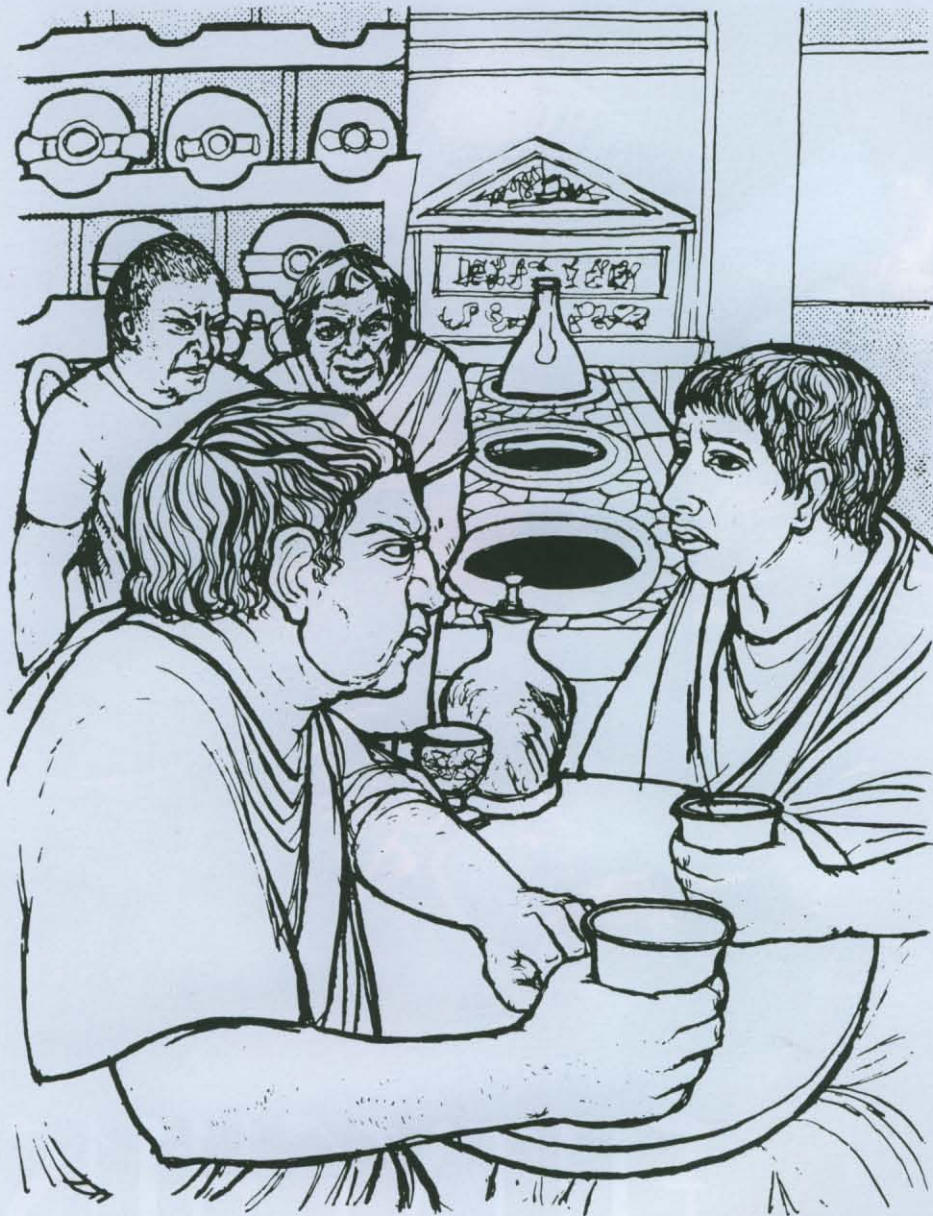


Warships in a harbour. Wall painting from the temple of Isis at Pompeii.



EUTYCHUS ET CLEMENS

STAGE 18



Eutychus et Clēmēns

taberna

postquam ad urbem advēnimus, ego Clēmētī diū tabernam quaerēbam. tandem Barbillus, quī trīgintā tabernās possidēbat, mihi tabernam optimam obtūlit. haec taberna prope templum deae Īsidis erat. in hāc parte urbis via est, in quā omnēs tabernārii vitrum vēdunt. taberna, quam Barbillus mihi offerēbat, optimum situm habēbat. Barbillus tamen dubitābat.

‘sunt multī latrōnēs’, inquit, ‘in illā parte urbis. tabernārii latrōnēs timent, quod pecūniam extorquent et vim īferunt. latrōnēs libertum meum interfēcērunt, quī nūper illam tabernam tenēbat. eum in viā invēnimus mortuum. libertus, quī senex obstinātus erat, latrōnibus pecūniam dare nōluit. latrōnēs eum necāvērunt tabernamque dīripuērunt.’

‘Clēmēns vir fortis, nōn senex īfirmus est’, ego Barbillō respondi. ‘fortūna semper eī favet. hanc tabernam Clēmētī emere volō. tibi centum aureōs offerō. placetne?’

‘mihi placet’, respondit Barbillus. ‘centum aureī sufficiunt.’ Barbillō igitur centum aureōs trādidi.

- 5 **vitrum** glass
situm: situs position, site
dubitābat: dubitāre
be doubtful
- 10 **latrōnēs: latrō** robber, thug
extorquent: extorquēre extort
vim īferunt: vim īferre
use force, violence
- 15 **dīripuērunt: dīripere** ransack
īfirmus weak
fortūna fortune, luck
centum aureōs
a hundred gold coins
sufficiunt: sufficere be enough



latrōnēs eum necāvērunt.

in officinā Eutychi

officinā: officina workshop

I

postquam tabernam Clémenti dedi, ille mihi grātiās maximās ēgit. statim ad viam, in quā taberna erat, festināvit: adeō cupiēbat tabernam possidēre.

adeō so much, so greatly

in viā vitreāriōrum erat ingēns turba. ibi Clēmēns tabernam suam prope templum Īsidis cōspexit. valvās ēvulsās vīdit, tabernam direptam. irātus igitur Clēmēns tabernārium vīcīnum rogāvit,

in viā vitreāriōrum

5 in the street of the glassmakers

valvās: valvae doors

ēvulsās: ēvulsus wrenched off

vīcīnum: vīcīnus

neighbouring, nearby

‘quis hoc fēcit?’

‘rogā Eutychem!’ inquit tabernārius, quī perterritus erat.

Clēmēns statim Eutychem quaesīvit. facile erat Clēmētī eum invenīre, quod officīnam maximam possidēbat. prō officīnā Eutychi stābant quattuor servī Aegyptiī. Clēmēns numquam hominēs ingentiōrēs quam illōs Aegyptiōs vīderat. eōs tamen nōn timēbat. ūnum servum ex ōrdine trāxit.

10

prō officīnā

in front of the workshop

quattuor four

‘heus! Atlās!’ inquit Clēmēns. ‘num dormīs? Eutychem, dominum tuum, interrogāre volō. cūr mihi obstās? nōn decōrum est tibi libertō obstāre.’

15

interrogāre question

tum Clēmēns servōs attonitōs praeteriit, et officīnam Eutychi intrāvit.

praeteriit: praeterire go past

II

Eutyclus in lectō recumbēbat; cibum ē canistrō gustābat. valdē sūdābat, et manūs in capillīs servī tergēbat. postquam Clēmēntem vīdit,

sūdābat: sūdāre sweat

manūs ... tergēbat

was wiping his hands

‘quis es, homuncule?’ inquit. ‘quis tē hūc admīsīt? quid vīs?’

5

capillīs: capillī hair

admīsīt:mittere let in

‘Quīntus Caecilius Clēmēns sum’, respondit Clēmēns. ‘dē tabernā, quam latrōnēs diripuērunt, cognōscere volō. nam illa taberna nunc mea est.’

Eutyclus, postquam hoc audīvit, Clēmēntem amīcissimē salūtāvit, et eum per officīnam dūxit. ipse Clēmētī fabrōs suōs dēmōstrāvit. in officīnā trīgintā vitreāriū Aegyptiī diligenter labōrābant; aderat vīlicus, quī virgam vibrābat.

10

amīcissimē: amīcē

in a friendly way

Eutyclus, postquam Clēmētī officīnam ostendit, negōtium agere coepit.

‘periculōsum est, mī amīce, in viā vitreāriōrum’, inquit. ‘multī fūrēs ad hanc viam veniunt, multī latrōnēs. omnēs igitur tabernāriū auxiliū ā mē petunt. tabernāriū mihi pecūniā dant, ego eīs praesidiū. tabernam tuam servāre possum. omnēs tabernāriū mihi decem aureōs quotannīs dare solent. paulum est. num tū praesidiū meum recūsāre vīs?’

15

praesidiū protection

paulum little

Clēmēns tamen Eutychō nōn crēdēbat.
 'ego ipse tabernam, in quā habitō, servāre possum', inquit
 Clēmēns. 'praesidium tuum recūsō.'
 tum libertus sēcūrus exiit.

sēcūrus *without a care*

Alexandria, home of luxury glass

Alexandrian glass was traded widely, even outside the Roman Empire. The glass beaker on the right was made in Alexandria but was found in Afghanistan. It has a painted design showing the princess Europa being carried off on the back of a bull, which is Jupiter in disguise.

The disc below is carved from glass in two layers, white on blue. We do not know where it was made, but the technique was probably used in Alexandria.



Clēmēns tabernārius

When you have read this story, answer the questions on page 99.

Clēmēns mox tabernam suam renovāvit. fabrōs condūxit, quī valvās mūrōsque refēcērunt. cēterī tabernāriī, quamquam Eutychem valdē timēbant, Clēmēntem libenter adiuvābant. nam Clēmēns cōmis erat et eīs saepe auxilium dabat.

haec taberna, ut dīxī, prope templum deae Īsidis erat. ad hoc templum Clēmēns, quī pius erat, cotīdiē adībat. ibi deam Īsidem adōrābat et eī ōrnāmentum vitreum saepe cōsecrābat.

sacerdōtēs, quī templum administrābant, mox Clēmēntem cognōvērunt. deinde Clēmēns Īsiacīs sē coniūnxit. sacerdōtēs eī librum sacrum dedērunt, in quō dē mystēriīs deae legere poterat. Clēmēns in templō cum sacerdōtibus cēnāre solēbat. in cellā templī habitābat fēlēs sacra. Clēmēns eam semper mulcēbat, et eī semper aliquid ex paterā suā dabat.

mox plūrimōs amīcōs Clēmēns habēbat. nam tabernāriī, quī Eutycho pecūniam invītī dabant, paulātīm Clēmēntī cōnfidēbant. tabernāriī Eutychem inimīcum putābant, Clēmēntem vindicem. tandem omnēs Eutycho pecūniam trādere nōluērunt.

renovāvit: renovāre restore

condūxit: condūcere hire

refēcērunt: reficere repair

ut as

pius: respectful to the gods

adōrābat: adōrāre worship

ōrnāmentum: ornament

vitreum: vitreus

glass, made of glass

cōsecrābat: cōsecrāre

dedicate

5 **Īsiacīs:** Īsiacus follower of Isis

sē coniūnxit: sē coniungere

join

sacrum: sacer sacred

mystēriīs: mystēria

15 **mulcēbat:** mulcēre stroke

paterā: patera bowl

cōnfidēbant: cōnfidere trust

putābant: putāre think

vindicem: vindex

champion, defender



itaque Eutyclus latrōnēs collēgit et eīs fūstēs dedit.
 'iste Clēmēs', inquit Eutyclus, 'molestissimus est. necesse est
 eī poenās dare.'

latrōnēs, postquam fūstēs cēpērunt, ad tabernam Clēmētis
 contendērunt.

collēgit: colligere

gather, collect

poenās dare

pay the penalty, be punished

Questions

	Marks
1 How did Clemens get his shop repaired?	2
2 Why did the other shopkeepers help Clemens (lines 2–4)?	2
3 Where was Clemens' shop? Why was this convenient for Clemens (lines 5–6)?	2
4 How did he show his respect for the goddess (lines 6–7)?	2
5 How did the priests help Clemens to learn more about the goddess (lines 9–11)?	2
6 Where did the sacred cat live? In what ways did Clemens show kindness to it?	1 + 2
7 mox plūrimōs amīcōs Clēmēs habēbat (line 14). Who were these friends?	1
8 From line 16, pick out the Latin word that shows how Clemens' friends regarded Eutyclus. How did they finally oppose Eutyclus?	2
9 What conclusion did Eutyclus come to about Clemens (lines 20–1)? Give two details.	2
10 Read the last sentence. Suggest two things the thugs might do.	2
TOTAL	20



About the language: gender

- 1 You have already seen how an adjective changes its ending to agree, in case and number, with the noun it describes. For example:

ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR: *rēx nūntium **fortem** salūtāvit.*
The king greeted the brave messenger.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL: *mercātōrēs **fessī** dormiēbant.*
The tired merchants were sleeping.

- 2 An adjective agrees with the noun it describes not only in case and number but also in a third way, **gender**. All nouns in Latin belong to one of three genders: **masculine**, **feminine** and **neuter**. Compare the following sentences:

*Clēmēns amīcōs **callidōs** laudāvit.*
Clemens praised the clever friends.

*Clēmēns ancillās **callidās** laudāvit.*
Clemens praised the clever slave-girls.

In both sentences, the word for 'clever' is accusative plural. But in the first sentence, the masculine form **callidōs** is used, because it describes **amīcōs**, which is masculine; in the second sentence, the feminine form **callidās** is used, because it describes **ancillās**, which is feminine.

- 3 The forms of the adjective which you have met are listed on page 153 in the Language Information section.

Detail of a mosaic panel, including coloured glass pieces.



4 Further examples:

- a 'ubi est coquus novus?' rogāvit Barbillus.
- b 'ubi est templum novum?' rogāvit Quīntus.
- c magnae nāvēs ad portum Alexandriāe nāvigābant.
- d tabernārii ignāvī per fenestrās spectābant.
- e nūntius dominō crūdēlī epistulam trādīdit.
- f milītēs latrōnem in villā mercātōris Graeci invēnērunt.

Write down the Latin noun and adjective pair in each sentence and use the Vocabulary in the Language Information section to find the gender of each noun and adjective pair.

- 5 The Latin word for 'who' or 'which' at the beginning of a relative clause changes like an adjective to match the gender of the word it describes. Notice how the forms of **quī** (masculine), **quae** (feminine) and **quod** (neuter) are used in the following examples:

rēx, **quī** in aulā habitābat, caerimōniam nūntiāvit.
The king, who lived in the palace, announced a ceremony.

puella, **quae** per forum contendēbat, latrōnēs vīdit.
The girl, who was hurrying through the forum, saw the thugs.

dōnum, **quod** āthlētam valdē dēlectāvit, erat statua.
The gift, which pleased the athlete very much, was a statue.

- 6 Nouns such as **pater**, **filius**, **sacerdōs**, which refer to males, are usually masculine; nouns such as **māter**, **fīlia**, **uxor**, which refer to females, are usually feminine. Other nouns can be masculine (e.g. **hortus**), feminine (e.g. **nāvis**) or neuter (e.g. **nōmen**).



prō tabernā Clēmētis

Clēmēns in templō deae Īsidis cum cēterīs Īsiacīs saepe cēnābat. quondam, ubi ā templō, in quō cēnāverat, domum redībat, amīcum cōspxit accurrentem.

‘taberna ardet! taberna tua ardet!’ clāmāvit amīcus. ‘tabernam tuam dīripiunt Eutyclus et latrōnēs. eōs vīdī valvās ēvellentēs, vitrum frangētēs, tabernam incendētēs. fuge! fuge ex urbe! Eutyclus tē interficere vult. nēmō eī latrōnibusque resistere potest.’

Clēmēns tamen nōn fūgit, sed ad tabernam quam celerrimē contendit. postquam illūc advēnit, prō tabernā stābat immōtus. valvās ēvulsās, tabernam dīreptam vīdit. Eutyclus extrā tabernam cum latrōnibus Aegyptiīs stābat, ridēbatque. Eutyclus cachinnāns

‘mī dulcissime!’ inquit. ‘nōnne tē dē hāc viā monuī? nōnne amīcōs habēs quōs vocāre potes? cūr absunt? fortasse sapientiōrēs sunt quam tū.’

Clēmēns cum summā tranquillitāte eī respondit, ‘absunt amīcī, sed deī mē servāre possunt. deī hominēs scelestōs pūnīre solent.’

Eutyclus irātissimus

‘quid dīcis?’ inquit. ‘tūne mihi ita dīcere audēs?’

tum Eutyclus latrōnibus signum dedit. statim quattuor Aegyptiī cum fūstibus Clēmētī appropinquābant. Clēmēns cōstitit. via, in quā stābat, erat dēserta. tabernāriī perterritī per valvās tabernārum spectābant. omnēs invītī Clēmēntem dēseruerant, simulatque Eutyclus et latrōnēs advēnerunt.

subitō fēlēs sacra, quam Clēmēns mulcēre solēbat, ē templō exiit. Clēmēntem rēctā petīvit. in umerum Clēmētis īsiluit. omnēs Aegyptiī statim fūstēs abiēcērunt et ad pedēs Clēmētis prōcubuērunt. Clēmēntem, quem fēlēs sacra servābat, laedere nōn audēbant.

saeviēbat Eutyclus, sicut taurus irātus. tum fēlēs in Eutyclus īsiluit, et caput vehementer rāsīt.

‘melius est tibi fugere’, inquit Clēmēns.

Eutyclus cum latrōnibus perterritus fūgit. postea neque Clēmēntem neque tabernāriōs laedere temptābat. nunc Clēmēns est princeps tabernāriōrum.

domum: domus home
accurrentem: accurrēns
running up

ēvellentēs: ēvellēns
wrenching off

frangētēs: frangēns breaking
incendentēs: incendēns
burning, setting on fire

illūc there, to that place

monuī: monēre warn

sapientiōrēs: sapiēns wise
tranquillitāte: tranquillitās
calmness

scelestōs: scelestus wicked

dēseruerant: dēserere desert
rēctā directly, straight
īsiluit: īsilire

jump onto, jump into

abiēcērunt: abicere
throw away

laedere harm

sicut taurus like a bull

rāsīt: rādere scratch

neque ... neque neither... nor
temptābat: temptāre try



Egyptian Cats

The Egyptians kept cats both as pets and to control rats and mice in their granaries and food stores. They also venerated cats as sacred animals as they thought they were earthly forms of the goddess Isis and another goddess called Bastet. When cats died they were mummified; vast numbers of them have been excavated.



Left: This expensive bronze cat was made as an offering to the goddess Bastet around 600 BC.



In Egyptian legend, each night a cat kills an evil snake that tries to prevent the sun from rising.

Practising the language

- 1 Complete each sentence with the right form of the adjective and then translate. Remember that adjectives agree with nouns in case, number and gender. If you are unsure of the gender of a noun you can check it in the vocabulary at the back of the book.

- a tabernāriū Eutycho pecūniam dedērunt. (multī, multae)
- b latrōnēs senem necāvērunt. (obstinātum, obstinātam)
- c Quīntus templum vīsītāvit. (magnificam, magnificum)
- d Aegyptiī Graecōs petīvērunt. (perterritōs, perterritās)
- e faber ad casam mē invitāvit. (benignus, benigna)
- f mercātor libertō praemium obtulit. (fidēli, fidēlibus)
- g Eutyclus officīnam habēbat. (ingentem, ingēns)
- h servus ē villā dominī fūgit. (crudēlem, crudēlis)

- 2 Complete each sentence with the right noun or phrase and then translate.

- a, quam Clēmēns possidēbat, in viā vitreāriōrum erat. (taberna, tabernae)
- b, quī templum administrābant, Clēmētī librum sacrum dedērunt. (sacerdōtēs, sacerdōs)
- c in templō, quod prope tabernam Clēmētis erat, habitābat (fēlēs sacra, fēlēs sacrae)
- d ubi Eutyclus et latrōnēs advēnērunt, valdē timēbant. (tabernārius Graecus, ceterī tabernāriī)
- e ad templum Īsidis festināvit et Clēmētī dē tabernā nārrāvit. (amicus fidēlis, amīcī Graecī)
- f ē templō Īsidis celeriter discessērunt et ad tabernam cucurrērunt. (amicus fidēlis, duo amīcī)

- 3 Complete each sentence with the right form of the verb and then translate.

- a Clēmēns ad tabernam, quam Quīntus, festināvit. (ēmerat, ēmerant)
- b ingēns turba, quae viam, tabernam spectābat. (complēverat, complēverant)
- c Clēmēns ad Eutyclus, quī latrōnēs, contendit. (mīserat, mīserant)
- d Eutyclus Clēmēntem, quem servī nōn, amīcissimē salūtāvit. (terrueat, terruerant)
- e Eutyclus dē tabernāriīs, quī praesidium, Clēmētī nārrāvit. (petiverat, petiverant)
- f Clēmēns tamen praesidium, quod Eutyclus eī, recūsāvit. (obtulerat, obtulerant)

Pick out the Latin word for 'who' or 'which' (**quī, quae**, etc.) at the beginning of each relative clause. Which noun does it refer to? Write down the gender of each pair.

Glassmaking in Alexandria

In the stories in this Stage, Quintus establishes Clemens in one of Alexandria's oldest and most successful industries – glassmaking. The earliest Egyptian glass vessels, discovered in tombs, date from about 1500 BC. When Alexandria was founded in 331 BC, craftsmen of many kinds soon flocked to the city, keen to practise and improve their skills. Among these craftsmen were glassmakers, who experimented with various ways of making glass, producing a wide range of different shapes and colours. Before long their styles and methods were being copied all over the civilised world. Their skills quickly spread to Rome, where there was a big demand for Alexandrian glass, and from Rome to Gaul, to the Rhineland and to Britain.

Glass is made from sand, with the addition of sodium carbonate produced from the ash of certain plants. Its earliest use was for glazing pottery. As time went on, it was discovered – perhaps by a potter – that if glass is heated until it becomes semi-liquid, it can be shaped and left to harden. At first this shaping was carried out by wrapping the molten glass round a clay and sand core, which had been moulded into the shape of a vase or any other object that was required. When the glass had hardened, the core was scraped out or washed out. But this method was only suitable for making small vessels, such as perfume containers.



A scent-bottle made around a sand core.



This bowl was made by lining a mould with differently coloured sticks of glass, then heating them until they melted and fused together.



This bowl is decorated in a typical Alexandrian style known as 'millefiori' (Italian for 'a thousand flowers'). Small pieces of coloured glass were arranged in a mould and then heated until they fused together.

Gradually, the craftsmen learned to make glass in various colours by adding different chemicals. Blue, green, brown and white were the commonest colours for the basic shapes, but many other colours were used for decoration. This was often added by trailing thin lines of molten glass onto the finished vessel, rather like piping coloured icing onto a fancy cake.

Late in the first century BC, in Egypt or Syria, a new invention completely changed the glassmaking industry. The glassmakers discovered that instead of wrapping the molten glass round a core, they could pick it up on the end of a hollow pipe, and shape it by blowing down the pipe. Glass-blowing is illustrated in the drawing below. The workman in the background has



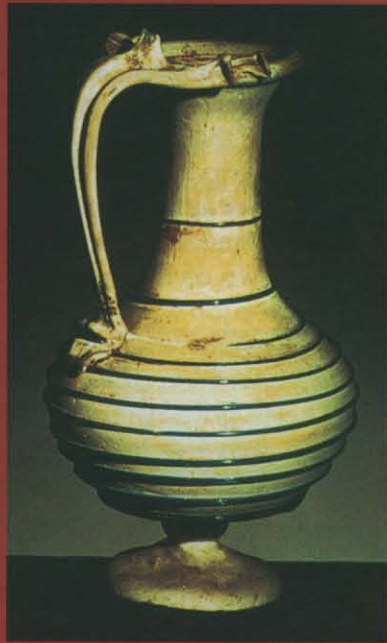
A modern glass-blower.

dipped his pipe into the crucible above the furnace and has lifted out a blob of molten glass. His next job is to blow steadily down the pipe, as the workman at the front of the picture is doing, in order to shape the glass into a hollow bubble. By careful reheating and repeated blowing, the glass bubble can be made very big. Many different shapes can be produced by swinging the bubble gently during the blowing, or by using special tools for shaping and cutting, some of which are shown in the picture. Identical objects can be produced by blowing the glass into a mould. Handles, bases and decoration can then be added; for example, thin lines of molten glass can be trailed onto the vessel.

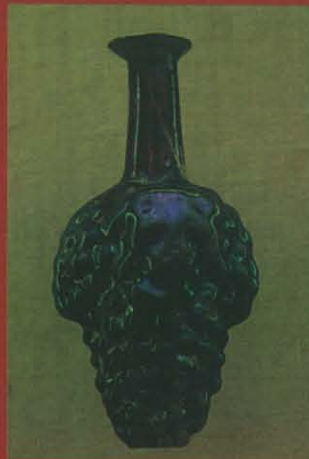
After the invention of glass-blowing, glassmakers were able to produce many different shapes and sizes of vessel quickly and efficiently. From then on, glass could be used not only for making luxury goods but for producing large quantities of ordinary household objects for everyday use. The fame of Alexandrian glass spread, and the Alexandrian glassmakers prospered.



A bubble of clear bluish glass has been shaped into a bird.



Above: A blown jug in white glass with trailed decoration in blue.



Left: This small scent-bottle in the shape of a bunch of grapes is made of purple glass which has been blown into a mould.



The Nile. Notice the fertile agricultural land between the desert and the river.

Egypt

South of Alexandria stretched the fertile valley of the river Nile. Every year the Nile flooded, watering the land and depositing rich new soil on the fields. This produced not only enough corn to supply the whole of Egypt but also a large surplus to be exported. However, the profits from the corn trade benefited only a small number of people.

Before the Romans came to Egypt, the country had been ruled by Egyptian 'pharaohs' (kings), then by Persians and Greeks. These rulers had worked out a system for making the fullest possible use of the land for their own advantage. They regarded the whole country as their own property, and treated the peasant farmers as their private force of workers. They had drawn up a detailed register of all the plots of land in Egypt and the crops grown on them, and in every village lived government officials whose job was to keep the register up-to-date and check up on the peasants who worked on the land.

The peasants had no choice but to work hard all the year round. They were not allowed to leave their village without permission, they had to plant whatever crop they were told, and they did not receive their share of the harvest until the ruler had received his. They were also responsible for the upkeep and repair of the country's canals and dykes. Everything the peasants did was checked by the officials. The following certificate, for example, was issued by an official called Dioscurus:

'Certificate. Year 16 of the Emperor Caesar Traianus Hadrianus Augustus. Zoilus son of Petesuchus son of Elites, his mother being Taorsenuphis, has worked on the embankment operations for four days at the canal of Patsontis in Bacchias. I, Dioscurus, signed this.'



Peasants harvesting corn under supervision.



Everything the peasants did was checked by the officials.

Such careful supervision gave the peasants little chance of going unnoticed or avoiding work. All they could do was complain. Many letters have been found addressed by peasants to government officials, and they frequently say the same thing: 'We are worn out: we shall run away'.

When the Romans came, they did nothing to improve the life of the peasants. The certificate quoted above was issued in the reign of the Emperor Hadrian, more than a hundred and fifty years after the Romans' arrival in Egypt. Like the previous rulers, the Romans were more concerned to use the land for their own benefit than to improve the working conditions of peasant farmers. Above all, they wanted to ensure a steady supply of corn to Rome. Without the corn from Egypt and North Africa, the huge population of Rome would have starved and rioted. To avoid this danger the emperors made sure that Egypt was under their personal control.

Further money was needed by the government, for example, to maintain the Pharos, the police and the huge numbers of officials. This money was raised by taxation. There were taxes, for example, on vineyards, slaves, dovecotes, and imported and exported goods. Government officials checked continually on the day-to-day activities of the Egyptians. If a man went fishing, an official went with him to register his catch; if anyone sailed out of Alexandria without a permit, he might be fined one third of his property. Licences were required for such activities as brewing, beekeeping and pig-breeding.

Under these conditions, it is not surprising that bribery and corruption were common. Here is an extract from the private accounts kept by a Greek living in Egypt:

gift	240 drachmas
to the guard	20 drachmas
bribes	2,200 drachmas
to two police agents	100 drachmas
to Hermias, police agent	100 drachmas
to a soldier	500 drachmas

Although such payments were illegal, they were regarded as a normal part of daily life, and the government usually ignored them.



Part of an Egyptian official document. This papyrus was written in Greek during the Roman period of rule, and concerns work done on a canal.



The god of the Nile bearing the river's rich harvest.

Vocabulary checklist 18

audeō, audēre	<i>dare</i>	mīles, mīlitis	<i>soldier</i>
caput, capitis	<i>head</i>	nam	<i>for</i>
coepī	<i>I began</i>	nēmō	<i>no one</i>
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī	<i>get to know, find out</i>	obstō, obstāre, obstitī	<i>obstruct, block the way</i>
dea, deae	<i>goddess</i>	pars, partis	<i>part</i>
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī	<i>point out, show</i>	petō, petere, petivī	<i>beg for, ask for</i>
discēdō, discēdere, discessī	<i>depart, leave</i>	postea	<i>afterwards</i>
fortasse	<i>perhaps</i>	prō	<i>in front of</i>
ibi	<i>there</i>	quō?	<i>where? where to?</i>
libenter	<i>gladly</i>	recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī	<i>refuse</i>
manus, manūs	<i>hand</i>	soleō, solēre	<i>be accustomed</i>



A Roman mosaic uses millefiori glass pieces for the clothes of these Egyptian characters.



ISIS

STAGE 19



1 hic vir est Aristō. Aristō est amīcus
Barbillī. in villā splendidā habitat, sed
miserrimus est.



2 haec fēmina est Galatēa. Galatēa est uxor
Aristōnis. Galatēa marītum saepe
vituperat, numquam laudat.



3 haec puella est Helena. Helena est filia
Aristōnis et Galatēae. multi iuvenēs hanc
puellam amant, quod pulcherrima est.



4 pompa splendida per viās Alexandriāe prōcēdit. omnēs Alexandrīnī hanc pompam spectāre volunt.

5 hī virī sunt sacerdotēs deae Īsidis. Aristō hōs virōs intentē spectat. sacerdotēs statuam deae per viās portant.



6 hae puellae prō pompā currunt. Helena hās puellās intentē spectat. puellae corōnās rosārum gerunt.

7 pompa ad templum Serāpidis advenit. prope hoc templum stant duo iuvenēs. hī iuvenēs tamen pompam nōn spectant.

Aristō

Aristō vir miserrimus est, quod vītam dūram vīvit. pater Aristōnis scrīptor nōtissimus erat, quī in Graeciā habitābat. tragoediās optimās scrībēbat. Aristō, quod ipse tragoediās scrībere vult, vītam quiētā quaerit; sed uxor et filia eī obstant.

Galatēa, uxor Aristōnis, amīcōs ad villam semper invitat. amīcī Galatēae sunt tībīcinēs et citharoedī. hī amīcī in villā Aristōnis semper cantant et iocōs faciunt. Aristō amīcōs uxōris semper fugit.

Helena quoque, filia Aristōnis et Galatēae, patrem vexat. multōs iuvenēs ad villam patris invitat. amīcī Helenae sunt poētae. in villā Aristōnis poētae versūs suōs recitant. Aristō hōs versūs nōn amat, quod scurrīlēs sunt. saepe poētae inter sē pugnant. saepe Aristō amīcōs filiae ē villā expellit. difficile est Aristōnī tragoediās scrībere.

dūram: dūrus *hard, harsh*
vīvit: vīvere *live*
scrīptor *writer*
tragoediās: tragoedia *tragedy*

5

tībīcinēs: tībīcen *pipe player*
citharoedī: citharoedus
cithara player

10

amat: amāre *love, like*
expellit: expellere *throw out*



The Roman theatre at Alexandria.



A writer of plays.

diēs fēstus

diēs fēstus *festival, holiday*

I

cīvēs laetī erant. nam hiems erat cōnfecta. iam prīmus diēs vēris erat. iam sacerdotēs deam Īsidem per viās urbis ad portum ferre solēbant. pompa, quam plūrimī Alexandrīnī spectāre volēbant, splendida erat.

hanc pompam tamen Barbillus spectāre nōlēbat.

'nōn commodum est mihi hodiē ad urbem ire', inquit. 'ego hanc pompam saepe vīdī, tū tamen numquam. amīcus meus igitur, Aristō, tē ad pompam dūcere vult.'

Barbillō grātiās ēgī, et cum Aristōne ad portum ībam. Galatēa et filia, Helena, nōbīscum ībant. viās urbis iam complēbant cīvēs Alexandrīnī. ubi portuī appropinquābāmus, Galatēa filiam et marītum assiduē vituperābat:

'Helena! nōlī festināre! tolle caput! Aristō! ēmovē hanc turbam! turba Alexandrīnōrum tōtam viam complet. in magnō periculō sumus.'

cōnfecta: cōnfectus *finished*

vēris: vēr *spring*

Alexandrīnī: Alexandrīnus
Alexandrian

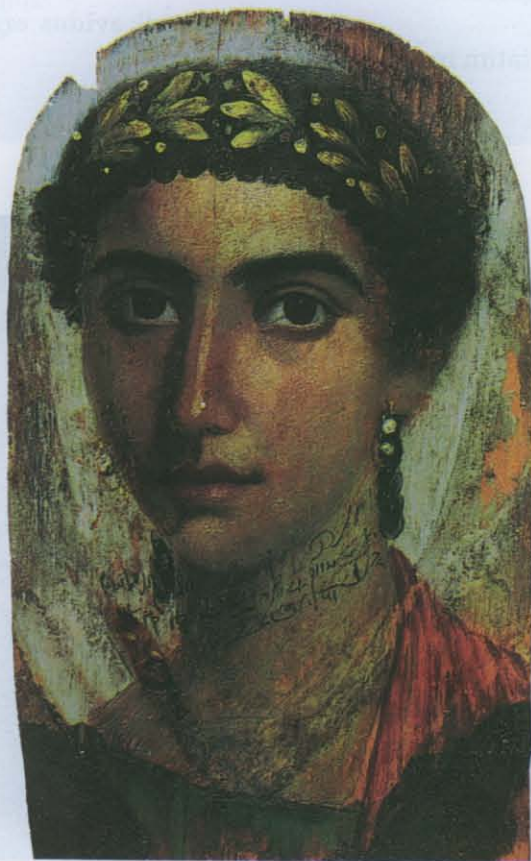
5

10

assiduē *continually*

tolle! *hold up!*

15



This portrait of a young woman called Eirene ('Peace') might help us to picture Helena in our stories. Portraits like this, and those on the next two pages, used to be attached to Egyptian mummies during the Roman period. They enable us to visualise the varied faces in the Alexandrian crowd at the festival of Isis.

II

When you have read this part of the story, answer the questions on page 117.

postquam ad templum Augusti vēnimus, Galatēa

'locum optimum nōvimus', inquit, 'unde tōtum spectāculum vidēre solēmus. servus nōbīs illum locum servat. Aristō! nōnne servum māne ēmisistī?'

'ēheu!' Aristō sibi dīxit.

ubi ad illum locum, quem Galatēa ēlēgerat, tandem pervēnimus, Galatēa duōs iuvenēs cōspexit. hī iuvenēs locum tenēbant, ubi Galatēa stāre volēbat.

'marīte!' exclāmāvit. 'ēmōvē illōs iuvenēs! ubi est servus noster? nōnne servum ēmisistī?'

'cārissima', respondit Aristō, quī anxius circumspēctābat, 'melius est nōbīs locum novum quaerere. iste servus sānē negligēs erat.'

Galatēa tamen, quae iam irātissima erat, Aristōnem incitāvit. ille igitur iuvenibus appropinquāvit et cōmiter locum poscēbat. 15

uxor tamen vehementer clāmāvit, 'iuvenēs! cēdite! nōlīte nōbīs obstāre!'

iuvenēs, quamquam rem graviter ferēbant, cessērunt. iuvenēs Galatēam spectābant timidī, Helenam avidī.

subitō spectātōrēs pompam cōspexērunt. statim multitudō 20 spectātōrum clāmōrem sustulit.

'ecce pompa! ecce! dea Isis!'

unde from where

5

10

sānē obviously

15

cōmiter politely, courteously

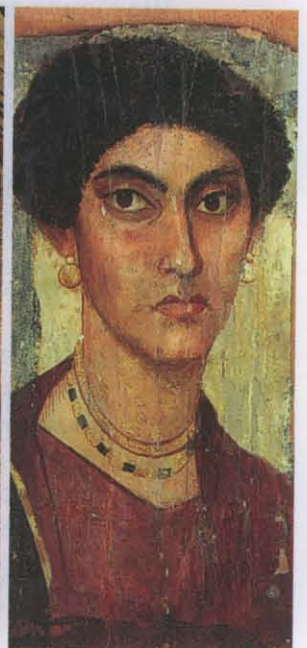
20

avidī: avidus eager



Questions

	Marks
1 ad templum Augustī vēnimus. Write down one thing you already know about this temple.	1
2 locum optimum nōvimus (line 2). Why did Galatea describe the place as optimum ?	1
3 What was the slave's job?	1
4 Why do you think Aristo said 'ēheu!' to himself?	2
5 In lines 6–8, what unpleasant surprise did Galatea have?	1
6 What did Galatea tell her husband to do? What suspicion did she have (lines 9–10)?	2
7 What alternative suggestion did Aristo make? How did he try to avoid blame?	2
8 After going up to the young men, how did Aristo carry out his wife's instruction?	1
9 What did Galatea do that showed her attitude was different from her husband's? What did she tell the young men to do (line 17)?	1 + 2
10 Why do you think they finally gave up the place (lines 18–19)?	2
11 Why do you think Galatea at last stopped nagging everyone?	1
12 Having read this part of the story, how would you describe Aristo's character? Make three points and give evidence for each one.	3
	<hr/> TOTAL 20



About the language 1: **hic** and **ille**

- 1 You have now met the following forms of the Latin word for 'this' (plural 'these'):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
<i>nominative</i>	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae
<i>accusative</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās

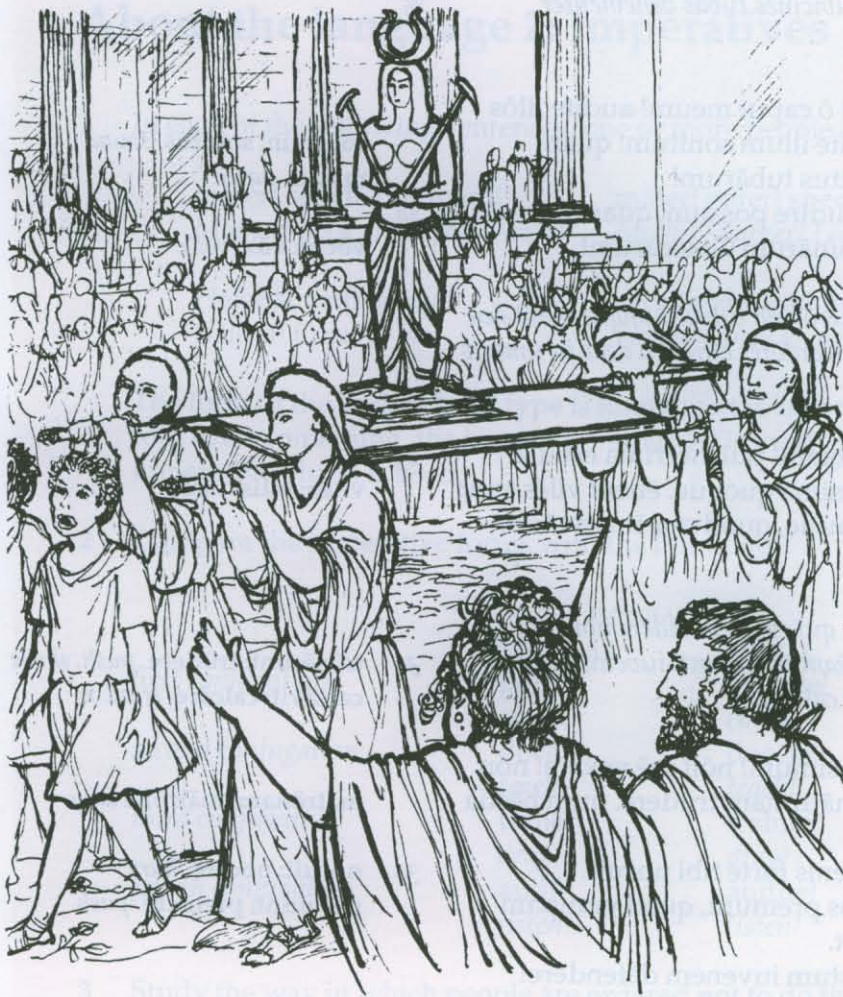
hic vir est Barbillus.	<i>This man is Barbillus.</i>
hanc pompam vīdī.	<i>I saw this procession.</i>
hae stolae sunt sordidae!	<i>These dresses are dirty!</i>
tibi hōs flōrēs trādō.	<i>I hand these flowers to you.</i>

- 2 You have also met the following forms of the Latin word for 'that' (plural 'those'):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
<i>nominative</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae
<i>accusative</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās

illa fēmina est Galatēa.	<i>That woman is Galatea.</i>
Clēmēns illōs sacerdotēs saepe adiuvābat.	<i>Clemens often used to help those priests.</i>
illae viae sunt periculōsae.	<i>Those roads are dangerous.</i>
multi Aegyptiī illud templum vīsītābant.	<i>Many Egyptians used to visit that temple.</i>

- 3 Note that **hic** and **ille** agree in case, number and gender with the nouns they describe.
- 4 Further examples:
- haec cēna est optima.
 - latrōnēs illum mercātōrem vituperant.
 - hoc templum prope forum est.
 - hī servī sunt Aegyptiī.
 - illud monumentum nōtissimum est.
 - ille iuvenis puellās vexat.



pompa

pompa adveniēbat. prō pompā currēbant multae puellae, quae flōrēs in viam spargēbant. post multitudinē puellārum tubicinēs et puerī prōcēdēbant. puerī suāviter cantābant. tubicinēs tubās inflābant. nōs, quī pompam plānē vidēre poterāmus, assiduē plaudēbāmus. duo iuvenēs tamen, quōs Galatēa ē locō emōverat, pompam vidēre vix poterant.

Helena: spectā illās rosās, quās fēminae in viam spargunt! rosās pulchriōrēs quam illās numquam vīdī.

iuvenis p̄mus: pompam vidēre nōn possum. sed spectā illam puellam! puellam pulchriōrem quam illam rārō vīdī.

Galatēa: Helena! hūc venī! stā prope mē! Aristō! cūr filiam tuam in tantā multitudinē nōn cūrās?

spargēbant: spargere scatter
tubicinēs: tubicen trumpeter
inflābant: inflāre blow
plānē clearly

5

rosās: rosa rose

rārō rarely

10

	(<i>subitō omnēs tubicinēs tubās vehementer inflābant.</i>)	15	
Galatēa:	ō mē miseram! ō caput meum! audīte illōs tubicinēs! audīte illum sonitum! quam raucus est sonitus tubārum!		sonitum: sonitus sound raucus harsh
iuuenis secundus:	tubicinēs vix audīre possum. quam raucae sunt vōcēs fēminārum Graecārum!	20	vōcēs: vōx voice
	(<i>post turbam puerōrum tubicinumque vēnit dea ipsa. quattuor sacerdotēs effigiem deae in umerīs ferēbant.</i>)		
Galatēa:	spectā illam stolam! pulcherrima est illa stola, pretiōsissima quoque. ēheu! vilēs sunt omnēs stolae meae, quod marītus avārus est.	25	vilēs: vilis cheap
	(<i>subitō iuuenēs, quī effigiem vidēre nōn poterant, Galatēam trūsērunt. iuuenis forte pedem Galatēae calcāvit.</i>)	30	trūsērunt: trūdere push, shove calcāvit: calcāre tread on
	ō iuuenem pessimum! nōlī mē vexāre! nōn decōrum est mātrōnam trūdere. num bēstia es?		mātrōnam: mātrōna lady
Helena:	māter! hic iuuenis forte tibi nocuit. spectātōrēs nōs premunt, quod pompam vidēre cupiunt.	35	nocuit: nocēre hurt premunt: premere push
Galatēa:	Helena! nōlī istum iuuenem dēfendere! īnsolentissimus est. Aristō! cūr mē nōn servās? uxōrem filiāque numquam cūrās. miserrima sum!	40	
Aristō:	ēheu! uxor mē vexat, filia mātrem. clāmōrēs eārum numquam effugere possum. facile est mihi tragoediās scribere. tōta vīta mea est tragoedia.	45	eārum their



tōta vīta mea est tragoedia!

About the language 2: imperatives

- 1 In each of the following sentences, one or more people are being told to do something:

māter! **spectā** pompam!
Mother! Look at the procession!

māter! pater! **spectāte** pompam!
Mother! Father! Look at the procession!

Helena! **venī** ad mē!
Helena! Come to me!

servī! **venīte** ad mē!
Slaves! Come to me!

The form of the verb in **bold type** is known as the **imperative**. If only one person is being told to do something, the imperative singular is used; if more than one person, the imperative plural is used.

- 2 Compare the imperative forms with the infinitive:

	IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	
<i>first conjugation</i>	portā! carry!	portāte! carry!	portāre to carry
<i>second conjugation</i>	docē! teach!	docēte! teach!	docēre to teach
<i>third conjugation</i>	trahe! drag!	trahite! drag!	trahere to drag
<i>fourth conjugation</i>	audī! listen!	audīte! listen!	audire to listen

- 3 Study the way in which people are ordered **not** to do things:

SINGULAR nōlī currere! don't run!
nōlī cantāre! don't sing!

PLURAL nōlīte festīnāre! don't hurry!
nōlīte trūdere! don't push!

nōlī and **nōlīte** are the imperative forms of the verb **nōlō**. Notice that they are used with the infinitive. **nōlī currere** literally means 'be unwilling to run' and so 'don't run'.

- 4 Further examples:

a iuvenēs! tacēte!

e nōlī dormīre!

b dīlīgenter labōrā!

f nōlīte discēdere!

c date mihi pecūniam!

g nōlīte Rōmānōs interficere!

d mē adiuvā!

h nōlī mē pūnīre!

In each example, state whether the order is given to one person or more than one.



hodiē sōl Arieti appropinquat.
According to legend, the heavens were supported on the shoulders of a giant, Atlas. In this sculpture of Atlas carrying the globe of the heavens, the constellation Aries (the Ram) can be seen towards the left, across three narrow parallel lines that mark the path of the sun across the heavens.

vēnātiō

I

Barbillus mē et Aristōnem ad vēnātiōnem invītāvit. māne vīlicum Phormiōnem cum multīs servīs ēmīsīt. Phormiō sēcum duōs haedōs dūxit. sed, ubi ē villā discēdēbāmus, astrologus Barbilli commōtus ad nōs cucurrit.

‘domine, quō festinās?’ clāmāvit. ‘cūr ē villā hodiē exīre vīs?’
 ‘ad praedium meum iter facimus’, Barbillus astrologō respondit.

‘sed, domine’, inquit astrologus, ‘immemor es. periculōsum est tibi hodiē ē villā exīre, quod hodiē sōl Arieti appropinquat.’

ubi hoc audīvī, astrologum dērīsī. Barbillus, quamquam eī crēdēbat, mē offendere nōluit. postquam rem diū cōgitāvit, ‘mihi placet exīre’, inquit.

astrologus igitur, ubi dominō persuādēre nōn potuit, amulētum eī dedit. tum sēcūrī ad praedium Barbilli contendimus. per partem praedii flūmen Nīlus lēniter fluēbat.

ubi illūc advēnimus, multōs servōs vīdimus collēctōs. in hāc multitūdine servōrum erant nōnnūllī Aethiopes, quī hastās in manibus tenēbant. prope Aethiopas stābat Phormiō, vīlicus Barbilli.

Phormiō ‘salvē, domine!’ inquit. ‘omnēs rēs tibi parāvimus. scaphās, quās postulāvistī, comparāvimus.’

‘haedōs cecīdistis?’ rogāvit Barbillus.

‘duōs haedōs cecīdimus, domine’, respondit vīlicus. ‘eōs in scaphās iam posuimus.’

haedōs: haedus

kid, young goat

5 **astrologus** *astrologer*

commōtus *alarmed, excited*

praedium *estate*

immemor *forgetful*

Arieti: Ariēs

10 *the Ram (sign of the zodiac)*

offendere *displease*

persuādēre *persuade*

amulētum *amulet, lucky charm*

15 **flūmen Nīlus** *river Nile*

lēniter *gently*

collēctōs: collēctus *assembled*

Aethiopes *Ethiopians*

20

scaphās: scapha

punt, small boat

cecīdistis: caedere *kill*

II

tum Phormiō nōs ad rīpam flūminis dūxit, ubi scaphae, quās comparāverat, dēligātae erant. postquam scaphās cōnscendimus, ad palūdem, in quā crocodilī latēbant, cautē nāvīgāvimus. ubi mediae palūdī appropinquābāmus, Barbillus Phormiōnī signum dedit. haedōs Phormiō in aquam iniēcit. crocodilī, ubi haedōs cōspexērunt, praecipitēs eōs petēbant. tum Aethiopes crocodilōs agitāre coepērunt. hastās ēmittēbant et crocodilōs interficiēbant. magna erat fortitūdō crocodilōrum, maior tamen perītia Aethiopum. mox multī crocodilī mortuī erant.

subitō ingentem clāmōrem audīvimus.

'domine!' clāmāvit Phormiō. 'hippopotamus, quem Aethiopes ē palūde excitāvērunt, scapham Barbillī ēvertit. Barbillum et trēs servōs in aquam dēiēcit.'

quamquam ad Barbillum et ad servōs, quī in aquā natābant, celeriter nāvīgāvimus, crocodilī iam eōs circumvenerant. hastās in crocodilōs statim ēmīsimus. ubi crocodilōs dēpulimus, Barbillum et ūnum servum servāre potuimus. sed postquam Barbillum ex aquā trāximus, eum invēnimus vulnerātum. hasta, quam servus ēmīserat, umerum Barbillī percusserat. Barbillus ā servō suō graviter vulnerātus erat.

rīpam: rīpa bank
dēligātae: dēligātus
tied up, moored

palūdem: palūs marsh, swamp

crocodilī: crocodilus crocodile

iniēcit: inicere throw in

praecipitēs: praeceps headlong

fortitūdō courage

perītia skill

hippopotamus hippopotamus
ēvertit: ēvertere overturn

dēpulimus: dēpellere drive off

ā servō suō by his own slave



Above: An amulet, in the form of the hippopotamus god Thueris.

Left: A mosaic showing pygmies hunting a crocodile and hippos in the river Nile.

About the language 3: vocative case

- 1 In each of the following sentences, somebody is being spoken to:

Aristō! quam stultus es!	<i>Aristo! How stupid you are!</i>
quid accidit, Barbille?	<i>What happened, Barbillus?</i>
contendite, amīcī!	<i>Hurry, friends!</i>
cūr rīdētis, cīvēs?	<i>Why are you laughing, citizens?</i>

The words in **bold type** are in the **vocative** case. If only one person is spoken to, the vocative singular is used; if more than one person, the vocative plural is used.

- 2 The vocative case has the same form as the nominative with the exception of the vocative singular of words in the second declension.
- 3 Compare the nominative singular and vocative singular of second declension nouns like **servus** and **Salvius**:

<i>nominative</i>	<i>vocative</i>
servus labōrat.	cūr labōrās, serve?
amīcus gladium habet.	dā mihi gladium, amīce!
Eutyclus est in viā.	ubi sunt latrōnēs, Eutyche?
Salvius est irātus.	quid accidit, Salvī?
filius currit.	cūr curris, filī?
Holcōnius in lectō recumbit.	Holcōnī! surge!

- 4 The vocative plural has the same form as the nominative plural:

<i>nominative</i>	<i>vocative</i>
custōdēs dormiunt.	vōs semper dormītis, custōdēs.
puerī in forō stant.	ubi est theātrum, puerī?
puellae ad pompam festinant.	nōlite currere, puellae!



A Nile crocodile in a painting in the temple of Isis at Pompeii.

Practising the language

- 1 Complete each sentence with the right form of **hic** or **ille** and then translate. If you are not sure of the gender of a noun check it in the vocabulary at the end of the book.

- a astrologus Barbillō dē periculō
persuādēre nōn potuit. (hic, hoc)
- b Phormiō servōs ad flūmen Nilum
mīsīt. (illōs, illās)
- c flūmen est periculōsum. (hic, hoc)
- d servī prope flūmen stābant. (hī, hae)
- e Phormiō scaphās in rīpā instrūxit. (illōs, illās)
- f crocodilī haedōs petivērunt. (illī, illae)
- g Aethiopes hippopotamum
ē palūde excitāvērunt. (illum, illam, illud)
- h hasta umerum Barbillī
percussit. (hic, haec, hoc)

- 2 Using the table of nouns on pages 150–1 of the Language Information section, complete these sentences by filling in the endings, and then translate. For example:

mercātor in viā stābat. amīcī mercātōr... salūtāvērunt.
mercātor in viā stābat. amīcī **mercātōrem** salūtāvērunt.
A merchant was standing in the street. The friends greeted the merchant.

- a puella stolam habēbat. stola puell... erat splendidissima.
- b servus leōn... in silvā vīdit. leō dormiēbat.
- c puellae tabernam intrāvērunt. mercātor puell... multās stolās ostendit.
- d cīvēs rēgem laudāvērunt, quod rēx cīv... magnum spectāculum dederat.
- e serv..., quod dominum timēbant, fūgērunt.
- f multī cīvēs in casīs habitābant. casae cīv... erant sordidae.
- g servī dīlīgenter labōrāvērunt. serv... igitur praemium dedī.
- h puer perterritus ad templum cucurrit et iānuam templ... pulsāvit.
- i rē..., quī in aulā sedēbat, tubam audīvit.
- j Salvius puer..., quī amphorās portābant, vehementer vituperāvit.

The worship of Isis

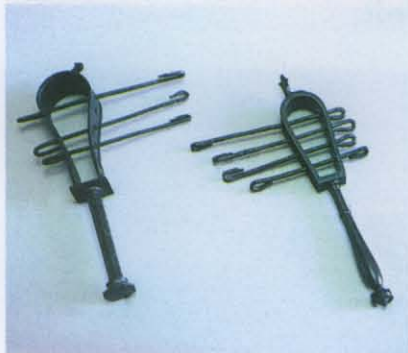
Isis was one of Egypt's oldest and most important goddesses. The Egyptians worshipped Isis for her power to give new life. They believed that she was responsible for the new life which followed the annual flooding of the Nile waters, and that she offered a hope of life after death for those who became her followers.

One of the most important festivals of Isis was held at the beginning of spring. It took place annually on 5 March, when the sailing season began and the large grain ships, so crucial to Rome's food supply, could once again set off safely across the Mediterranean. A statue of Isis was carried in a procession down to the Great Harbour.

The procession was headed by dancers and musicians playing pipes, trumpets and castanets. Female attendants scattered roses in the roadway and over the tightly packed crowd. The statue of Isis was carried high on the shoulders of her priests, so that everyone could get a glimpse of the goddess and her splendid robe. Next came more priests and more trumpeters and finally the high priest, wearing garlands of roses and shaking a sacred rattle known as a **sistrum**.

At the harbour, a special newly built ship was moored. Its stern was shaped like a goose's neck and was covered with gold plate. First the high priest dedicated the ship to Isis and offered prayers; then the priests and people loaded it with gifts of spices and flowers; finally the mooring-ropes were unfastened and the wind carried the ship out to sea.

After the ceremony at the harbour, the statue of Isis was taken back to the temple. The spectators crowded into the open area in front of the temple, and the priests replaced the statue in the **cella** or sanctuary. Then a priest read to the people from a sacred book, and recited prayers for the safety of the Roman people and their emperor, and for sailors and ships.



Two bronze sistra.



Woman holding a sistrum.

Isis

According to the Egyptians, Isis loved her brother, the god Osiris who appeared on earth in the form of a man. However, Osiris was murdered. His body was cut up and the pieces were scattered throughout the world. Overcome with grief, Isis set out on a search for the pieces of Osiris' corpse. When at last she had found them all, a miracle took place: the dead Osiris was given new life and became the father of the child Horus. This is why the Egyptians worshipped Isis as a bringer of new life.



Isis nursing her child, Horus.



Above: Isis, as the protector of shipping, holds a square sail in this Alexandrian coin. The Pharos can be seen on the right.

Left: Isis and her brother Osiris.



Left: Mosaic showing the Nile in flood. The Egyptians believed that Isis sent these floods, which brought Egypt its fertile soil.

The festival was noisy and colourful. Everybody was on holiday, and although the religious ceremony was serious, it was also good entertainment. When the ceremony was over, the Alexandrians continued to enjoy themselves. Their behaviour was sometimes criticised, for example by the writer Philo:

'They give themselves up to heavy drinking, noisy music, amusements, feasting, luxury and rowdy behaviour, eager for what is shameful and neglecting what is decent. They wake by night and sleep by day, turning the laws of nature upside down.'

But in spite of Philo's words, a festival of Isis was not just an excuse for a holiday. The worship of the goddess was taken seriously by many Egyptians, who went regularly to her temple, prayed to her statue and made offerings. Some of them, like Clemens in Stage 18, went further and became members of the special brotherhood of Isis. This involved a long period of preparation leading up to an initiation ceremony in the temple. Those who wished to join the brotherhood of Isis had to begin with an act of repentance for the sins they had committed in the past; for example, they might offer a sacrifice, or abstain from food, or go on a pilgrimage. In a Latin novel known as *The Golden Ass*, the main character becomes a follower of Isis. He explains to his readers how he prepared to be admitted to the brotherhood. First his body was washed by the priests in a ceremony of baptism; next he was taught about the sacred mysteries of the goddess, and forbidden to reveal them to anyone outside the brotherhood; then he fasted for ten days before finally undergoing the initiation ceremony in the temple.



A ceremony outside a temple of Isis.



As the worship of Isis spread from Egypt into the Greek and Roman world, new ways were found of depicting the goddess, left. This Egyptian drawing shows her with her hieroglyph, a throne, above her head. She carries a sceptre in one hand and an ankh, the symbol for life, in the other. On the right is a Roman painting of Isis holding the sacred cobra of Egypt. It was found in her temple at Pompeii.



This was a ceremony of mystery and magic, full of strange and emotional experiences for the worshippers. Those who were initiated believed that they had personally met Isis and that by dedicating themselves to her they could hope for life after death. But the exact details of the ceremony were kept strictly secret, as the narrator of *The Golden Ass* explains: 'If you are interested in my story, you may want to know what was said and done in the temple. I would tell you if I was allowed to tell, you would learn if you were allowed to hear; but your ears and my tongue would suffer for your foolish curiosity.'

The worship of Isis spread from Alexandria across the ancient world. Temples to Isis have been found in places as far apart as London and the Black Sea. A group of priests serving in a temple of Isis at Pompeii suffered a miserable death when the city was destroyed in the eruption of Vesuvius. They collected the sacred objects and treasures, and fled from the temple, but by then it was too late. Their bodies were found along the route of their flight across the city, each corpse surrounded by the valuables he had tried to save.



This food – nuts, grain and bread – was found in the temple of Isis at Pompeii.

Vocabulary checklist 19

Adjectives from now on are usually listed as in the Language Information section (see page 170).

amō, amāre, amāvī	<i>love, like</i>	iter, itineris	<i>journey</i>
cārus, cāra, cārum	<i>dear</i>	locus, locī	<i>place</i>
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī	<i>think, consider</i>	māne	<i>in the morning</i>
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī	<i>obtain</i>	nōvī	<i>I know</i>
cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī	<i>finish</i>	perīculum, perīculī	<i>danger</i>
cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī	<i>look after</i>	plūrimī	<i>very many</i>
filia, filiae	<i>daughter</i>	poscō, poscere, poposcī	<i>demand, ask for</i>
fluō, fluere, flūxī	<i>flow</i>	tot	<i>so many</i>
forte	<i>by chance</i>	vexō, vexāre, vexāvī	<i>annoy</i>
grātiās agō	<i>I thank, give thanks</i>	vīvō, vīvere, vīxī	<i>live</i>
hasta, hastae	<i>spear</i>	vix	<i>hardly, scarcely</i>
illūc	<i>there, to that place</i>	vōx, vōcis	<i>voice</i>



In Egyptian mythology, the male hippo was identified with Seth, the god of storms and the enemy of Isis and Osiris. Small figures like this are often found in tombs.



MEDICUS

STAGE 20



1 servī ad villam revēnērunt, Barbillum portantēs.



2 ancillae prope lectum stābant, lacrimantēs.



3 astrologus in cubiculum irrūpit, clāmāns.



4 Barbillus, in lectō recumbēns, astrologum audīvit.



5 Phormiō ad urbem contendit, medicum quaerēns.

remedium astrologī

ego et servī cum Barbillō ad villam quam celerrimē rediimus. multus sanguis ex vulnere Barbilli effluēbat. Phormiō, quī servōs vulnerātōs s̄anāre solēbat, tunicam suam sciderat; partem tunicae circum umerum Barbilli dēligāverat. fluēbat tamen sanguis.

servī, quī Barbillum portābant, ubi cubiculum intrāvērunt, in lectum eum lēniter posuērunt. duae ancillae prope lectum stābant lacrimantēs. Phormiō ancillās ē cubiculō ēmīsīt et servōs ad sē vocāvit.

‘necesse est vōbīs’, inquit, ‘magnum numerum arāneārum quaerere. ubi sanguis effluit, nihil melius est quam arāneae.’

servī per tōtam villam contendēbant, arāneās quaerentēs; magnum clāmōrem tollēbant. Phormiō, postquam servī multās arāneās ad cubiculum tulērunt, in umerum dominī eās collocāvit.

astrologus ancillās lacrimantēs vīdit, servōsque clāmantēs audīvit. statim in cubiculum Barbilli irrūpit, exclāmāns:

‘nōne hoc prōvīdī? ō nefāstum diem! ō dominum infēlicem!’

‘habēsne remedium?’ rogāvī anxius.

‘remedium certum habeō’, respondit astrologus. ‘facile est mihi Barbillum s̄anāre, quod nōs astrologī sumus vērī medicī. prīmō necesse est mihi mūrem nigrum capere. deinde mūrem captum dissecāre volō. postrēmō eum in umerum Barbilli pōnere volō. hoc solum remedium est.’

subitō, Barbillus, quī astrologum audīverat, oculōs aperuit. postquam mihi signum languidum dedit, in aurem meam susurrāvit,

‘quaere Petrōnem, medicum bonum!’

Phormiōnem, quī Petrōnem bene nōverat, ē villā statim ēmīsī. itaque vilicus medicum quaerēbat, astrologus mūrem.

remedium cure

vulnere: vulnus wound

effluēbat: effluere

pour out, flow out

5 s̄anāre heal, cure

sciderat: scindere tear up

dēligāverat: dēligāre bind, tie

lectum: lectus bed

10 numerum: numerus number

arāneārum: arānea

spider's web

tollēbant: tollere raise

15 collocāvit: collocāre place

prōvīdī: prōvidēre foresee

nefāstum: nefāstus dreadful

20 certum: certus

certain, infallible

vērī: vērū true, real

medicī: medicus doctor

mūrem: mūs mouse

25 nigrum: niger black

captum: captus

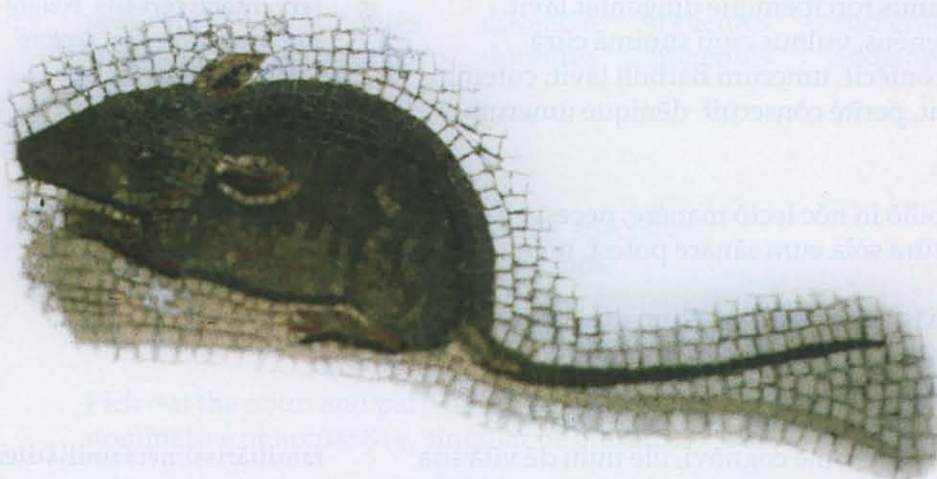
captured, caught

dissecāre cut up

languidum: languidus weak,

30 feeble

aurem: auris ear





Petrō

Petrō, postquam dē vulnere Barbillī audīvit, statim ad villam eius festināvit. ubi cubiculum intrāvit, astrologum vīdit, quī Barbillum s̄anāre temptābat. astrologus m̄rem dissectum in vulnus dominī collocābat, versum magicum recitāns. Petrō, simulac m̄rem cōspexit, irātissimus erat; astrologum verberāvit et ē cubiculō expulit.

tum Petrō, postquam umerum Barbillī inspexit, spongiam cēpit et in acētō summersit. eam in vulnus collocāvit. Barbillus exanimātus reccidit.

Petrō ad mē sē vertit.

‘necesse est tibi mē adiuvāre’, inquit. ‘difficile est mihi Barbillum s̄anāre. dē vītā eius dēspērō, quod tam multus sanguis etiam nunc effluit.’

itaque medicō auxilium dedī. Petrō, postquam aquam ferventem postulāvit, manūs forcipemque diligenter lāvīt. deinde, forcipem firmē tenēns, vulnus cum summā cūrā inspexit. postquam hoc cōnfēcit, umerum Barbillī lāvīt; cutem, quam hasta servī secuerat, perītē cōnseruit. dēnique umerum firmē dēligāvit.

mē ita monuit Petrō:

‘nunc necesse est Barbillō in hōc lectō manēre; necesse est eī quiēscere et dormīre. nātūra sōla eum s̄anāre potest, nōn astrologus.’

Petrōnī grātiās maximās ēgī. apud Barbillum diū manēbam, negōtium eius administrāns. Barbillus enim mihi sōlī cōnfidēbat. cotidiē ad cubiculum, ubi iacēbat aeger, veniēbam. multōs sermōnēs cum Barbillō habēbam, prope lectum sedēns. postquam Barbillum familiārissimē cognōvī, ille mihi dē vītā suā multum nārrāvit. sine dubiō fortūna eum graviter afflīxerat.

eius his

dissectum: **dissectus** *cut up, dismembered*

5 **versum magicum:** **versus** *magicus* *magic spell*

spongiam: **spongia** *sponge*

acētō: **acētum** *vinegar*

summersit: **summergere** *dip*

10 **reccidit:** **recidere** *fall back*

15 **ferventem:** **fervēns** *boiling*

forcipem: **forceps** *doctors' tongs, forceps*

firmē *firmly*

cutem: **cutis** *skin*

20 **perītē** *skilfully*

cōnseruit: **cōnserere** *stitch*

monuit: **monēre** *advise*

quiēscere *rest*

nātūra *nature*

25

familiārissimē: **familiāriter** *closely, intimately*

About the language 1: present participles

1 Study the following sentences:

medicus, per forum **ambulāns**, Phormiōnem cōspexit.
The doctor, walking through the forum, caught sight of Phormio.

Clēmēns Eutyichum in mediā viā **stantem** invēnit.
Clemens found Eutyichus standing in the middle of the road.

Phormiō ancillās in cubiculō **lacrimantēs** audīvit.
Phormio heard the slave-girls crying in the bedroom.

The words in **bold type** are **present participles**. A present participle is used to describe a noun. For example, in the first sentence, **ambulāns** describes the doctor.

2 Further examples:

- a astrologus in cubiculum irrūpit, clāmāns.
- b puerī, per urbem currentēs, Petrōnem cōspexērunt.
- c spectātōrēs sacerdotem ē templō discēdentem vīdērunt.
- d Galatēa iuvenēs in locō optimō stantēs vituperāvit.

Pick out the present participle in each sentence and find the noun it describes.

3 Study the different forms of the present participle (masculine and feminine):

	SINGULAR			
<i>nominative</i>	portāns	docēns	trahēns	audiēns
<i>accusative</i>	portantem	docentem	trahentem	audientem
	PLURAL			
<i>nominative</i>	portantēs	docentēs	trahentēs	audientēs
<i>accusative</i>	portantēs	docentēs	trahentēs	audientēs

4 Further examples:

- a fūr ē villā effūgit, cachinnāns.
- b rēx militēs, prō templō sedentēs, spectābat.
- c Helena in hortō ambulābat, cantāns.
- d puellae, in pompā ambulantēs, rosās spargēbant.
- e Clēmēns fēlem sacram in tabernā iacentem invēnit.

Pick out the noun and participle pair in each sentence and state whether it is nominative or accusative, singular or plural.

fortūna crūdēlis

When you have read this story, answer the questions on page 137.

Barbillus uxōrem fidēlem filiumque optimum habēbat. Plōtīna, uxor Barbillī, erat fēmina placida, quae domī manēbat contenta. Rūfus, filius eōrum, erat iuuenis impiger. ad palaestram cum amīcīs saepe adībat; in dēsertīs bēstiās ferōcēs agitāre solēbat. aliquandō, sicut aliī iuuenēs, contentiōnēs cum parentibus habēbat. sed parentēs Rūfī eum maximē amābant, et ille eōs.

inter amīcōs Rūfī erat iuuenis Athēniēnsis, Eupor. hic Eupor ad urbem Alexandriam vēnerat et medicīnae studēbat. saepissimē domum Barbillī vīsītābat. tandem ad urbem Athēnās rediit, ubi artem medicīnae exercēbat. Eupor mox epistulam scrīpsit, in quā Rūfum parentēsque ad nūptiās suās invītāvit. Rūfus ad Graeciam ire valdē cupiēbat, sed Barbillus nāvigāre timēbat, quod hiems iam appropinquābat. astrologum suum igitur arcessīvit, et sententiam eius rogāvit. astrologus, postquam diū cōgitāvit, Rūfō parentibusque respōnsum dedit.

‘rem periculōsam suscipitis. lūna Scorpiōnem iam intrat. tūtius est vōbīs domī manēre.’

Barbillus et uxor astrologō, quī erat vir doctissimus, libenter crēdidērunt, sed Rūfus rem graviter ferēbat. ubi Barbillus aberat, Rūfus saepe ad mātrem ībat, patrem dēplōrāns:

‘pater stultissimus est, quod astrologō crēdit. astrologī nōn sunt nautae. nihil dē arte nāvigandī sciunt.’

itaque Rūfus Plōtīnae persuāsit, sed patrī persuādere nōn poterat. Barbillus obstinātus nāvigāre nōluit. Rūfus igitur et Plōtīna Barbillum domī reliquērunt, et ad Graeciam nāvigābant. ubi tamen nāvis, quae eōs vehēbat, Graeciae appropinquābat, ingēns tempestās eam obruit. Rūfus ad litus natāre poterat, sed Plōtīna, quam Barbillus valdē amābat, in magnīs undīs periit.

ubi Barbillus dē naufragiō, in quō uxor perierat, audīvit, maximē commōtus erat. filium iterum vidēre nōlēbat. Rūfus, quamquam domum redire volēbat, patrī pārēbat. in Graeciā diū manēbat; sed tandem iter in Britanniam fēcit, ubi in exercitū Rōmānō militāvit.

placida: placidus

calm, peaceful

domī at home

eōrum their

impiger lively, energetic

in dēsertīs in the desert

aliquandō sometimes

maximē very much

Athēniēnsis Athenian

medicīnae: medicīna medicine

studēbat: studēre study

artem: ars art

exercēbat: exercēre

practise, exercise

nūptiās: nūptiae wedding

respōnsum answer

Scorpiōnem: Scorpiō

Scorpio (sign of the zodiac)

tūtius est it would be safer

nāvigandī of sailing

reliquērunt: relinquere leave

vehēbat: vehere carry

tempestās storm

obruit: obruere overwhelm

commōtus upset, distressed

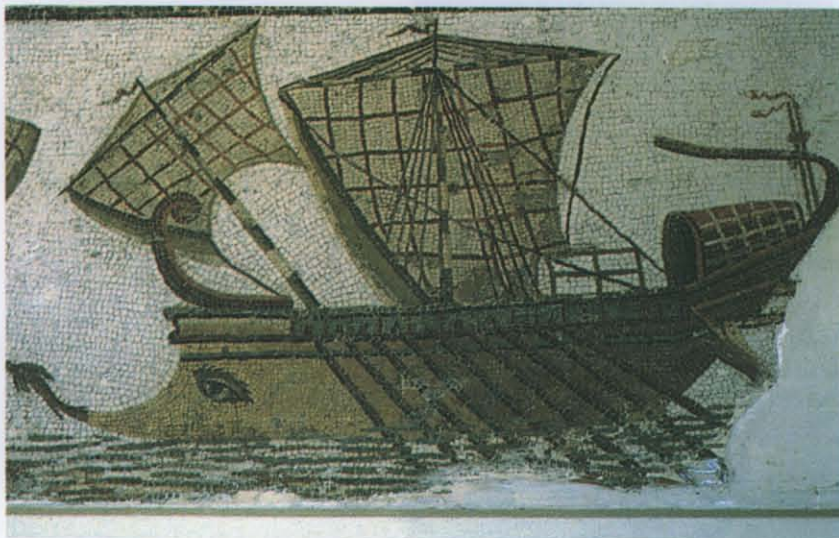
pārēbat: pārēre obey

exercitū: exercitus army

Questions

Marks

1	What are we told about Plotina's character in lines 1–2? Give three details.	3
2	Why is iuvenis impiger (line 3) a good description of Rufus? Give two reasons for your answer.	2
3	What kind of a relationship did Rufus have with his parents (lines 5–6)?	2
4	What was Eupor doing in Alexandria?	1
5	When did Eupor write his letter? What did the letter contain (lines 9–11)?	1 + 2
6	Why did Barbillus ask for the opinion of his astrologer (lines 12–14)?	2
7	What was the astrologer's reply (lines 16–17)?	3
8	Rūfus rem graviter ferēbat . Why do you think Rufus was upset? What did he do (lines 19–20)?	1 + 2
9	In lines 23–4, did Rufus get all his own way?	2
10	What happened when the ship was approaching Greece? What happened to Rufus and Plotina?	1 + 2
11	Why did Rufus not return home? What did he do after leaving Greece (lines 30–3)?	2 + 2
12	In line 21 Rufus said ' pater stultissimus est, quod astrologō crēdit '. From what happened to Barbillus and his family, do you think Rufus was right? Give a reason for your answer.	2
TOTAL		30



Plotina and Rufus would have sailed in a cargo ship like this one. There were no ships that carried only passengers in the Roman world.

About the language 2: eum, eam, etc.

- 1 You have now met various forms of the Latin word for 'him', 'her', 'them', etc.:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
accusative	eum	eam	eōs	eās
genitive	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum
dative	eī	eī	eīs	eīs

Clēmēns officinam intrāvit. Eutyclus **eum** salūtāvit.
Clemens entered the workshop. Eutyclus greeted him.

servi ingentēs erant. Clēmēns tamen **eōs** neglēxit.
The slaves were huge. However, Clemens ignored them.

Barbillus mē ad cēnam invitāvit. ego ad villam **eius** contendī.
Barbillus invited me to dinner. I hurried to his house.

latrōnēs celeriter convēnērunt. Eutyclus **eīs** fūstēs trādīdit.
The thugs assembled quickly. Eutyclus handed out clubs to them.

- 2 Further examples:

- a Barbillus in cubiculō iacēbat. Quīntus eī vīnum dedit.
- b Galatēa maritum vituperābat. tōta turba eam audīvit.
- c puellae suāviter cantābant. Aristō vōcēs eārum laudāvit.
- d ubi Petrō advēnit, Phormiō eum ad cubiculum dūxit.

astrologus victor

I

astrologus, quī in villā Barbillī habitābat, erat vir ingenīi prāvī. astrologus et Petrō inimīci erant. astrologus Syrius, medicus Graecus erat. Petrō artem medicīnae in urbe diū exercuerat. multī Alexandrīnī, quōs Petrō sānāverat, artem eius laudābant.

astrologus tamen in villā Barbillī habitābat, Petrō in urbe Alexandriā. facile igitur erat astrologō Barbillum vīsītāre. ad cubiculum, in quō dominus aeger iacēbat, saepe veniēbat. ubi Petrō aberat, astrologus in aurem dominī dīcēbat,

'in periculō maximō es, domine. Petrō medicus pessimus est. paucōs sānāvit. multōs aegrōs ad mortem mīsīt. num Petrōnī

vir ingenīi prāvī
a man of evil character

5

10

cōnfidis? Petrō est vir avārissimus; nēmō est avārior quam ille. pecūniam tuam cupit. necesse est tibi eum ē villā expellere.'

Barbillus astrologum anxius audīvit. sed, quamquam dolor cotīdiē ingravēscēbat, medicō etiam nunc crēdebāt. ubi medicum expellere Barbillus nōlēbat, astrologus cōnsilium cēpit. 15

dolor *pain*
ingravēscēbat: ingravēscere
grow worse

II

postrīdiē astrologus in cubiculum dominī irrūpit, clāmāns:

'domine! tibi nūntium optimum ferō. tē sārāre possum! dea Isis, quae precēs meās semper audit, noctū somnium ad mē mīsīt. in somniō per viās urbis Alexandriāe ambulābam. subitō puerum vīdī in viā stantem. puer erat servus tuus, quem Aegyptiī in tumultū necāvērunt. mihi dē medicāmentō exquisītissimō nārāvīt.'

nūntium: nūntius *news*
precēs *prayers*
noctū *by night*
5 somnium *dream*
medicāmentō:
medicāmentum *ointment*
exquisītissimō: exquisītus
special
10 composuit: compōnere
put together, mix, make up
ūnixit: unguere *anoint, smear*

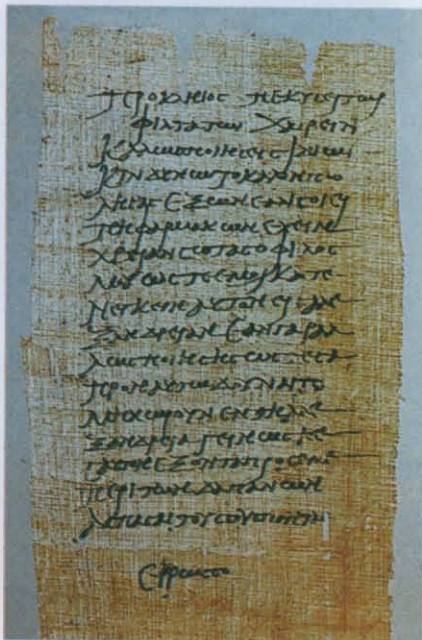
Barbillus, ubi hoc audīvit, astrologō sē tōtum trādīdit. ille igitur, postquam medicāmentum composuit, umerum dominī aperuit et ūnixit. sed medicāmentum astrologī pessimum erat. ingravēscēbat vulnus Barbilli.

astrologus, ubi hoc sēnsit, ē villā fūgit perterritus. Barbillus, dē vitā suā dēspērāns, mē ad cubiculum arcessīvit.

'mī Quīnte', inquit, in aurem susurrāns, 'nōlī lacrimāre! moritūrus sum. id plānē intellegō. necesse est omnibus mortem obīre. hoc ūnum ā tē postulō. filiū meum in Britannīā quaere! refer eī hanc epistolam! ubi Rūfum ē villā expulī irātus, eī magnam iniūriam intulī. nunc tandem veniam ā Rūfō petō.'

15 obīre *meet*
refer: referre *carry, deliver*
iniūriam intulī: iniūriam
inferre *do an injustice to,*
20 *bring injury to*

ubi hoc audīvī, Petrōnem arcessere volēbam, sed Barbillus obstinātus recūsābat. arcessīvī tamen illum. sed ubi advēnit, Barbillus iam mortuus erat.



A letter from Alexandria, written in Greek on papyrus in the first century AD.

Practising the language

1 Complete each sentence with the right form of the participle. Then translate the sentence.

- a Barbillus, dē vitā, Quīntum arcessīvit.
(dēspērāns, dēspērāntēs)
- b Quīntus libertum in tabernā invēnit.
(labōrāns, labōrantem)
- c sacerdotēs, prō templō, silentium poposcērunt.
(stāns, stantēs)
- d hippopotamum nōn cōspexī.
(adveniēns, advenientem)
- e Aegyptiū per viās cucurrērunt, magnum clāmōrem
(tollēns, tollentēs)
- f Clēmēns tabernariōs ā latrōnibus vīdit.
(fugiēns, fugientēs)
- g puer mortuus dēcidit, dominum
(dēfendēns, dēfendentem, dēfendentēs)
- h Aristō iuvenēs versum scurrilem audīvit.
(recitāns, recitantem, recitantēs)

2 Complete each sentence with the right form of the verb. Then translate the sentence.

- a Barbillus: Quīnte! mēcum ad vēnātiōnem!
(venī, venīte)
- b Phormiō: servī! ad flūmen Nīlum!
(prōcēde, prōcēdite)
- c astrologus: domine!, ē villā discēdere! (nōlī, nōlīte)
- d Quīntus: amīce! nōlī astrologō! (crēde, crēdere)
- e Phormiō: servī! ad mediam palūdem cautē!
(nāvigā, nāvigāte)
- f Barbillus: Aethiopes! hastās! (ēmitte, ēmittite)
- g Quīntus: servī! hippopotamum vexāre!
(nōlī, nōlīte)
- h Barbillus: Quīnte! vulnerātus sum. mē!
(servā, servāte)

3 Translate into English:

Narcissus

Aristō: Galatēa! fortūna nōbīs favet! iuvenis Narcissus, quem heri vīdimus, Helenae dōnum mīsit. dōnum, quod iuvenis mīsit, pretiōsissimum est. dōnum mihi quoque mīsit. iuvenis Narcissus Helenam nostram amat.

5

Galatēa: quid dīcis, asine? iuvenis, quī prope nōs stābat, filiae nostrae dōnum mīsit? ēheu! maritum stultissimum habeō. parentēs Narcissī humilēs sunt. māter est Aegyptia, pater caupō. taberna, quam tenet, sordida est.

10

Aristō: parentēs, quōs vituperās, nōn nōvī. sed Narcissus ipse probus et benignus est. iuvenis etiam liberālis est. libellum enim mihi dedit. (*Aristō libellum īnspicit.*) ēheu! Narcissus poēta est. suōs versūs scurrilēs mihi mīsit.

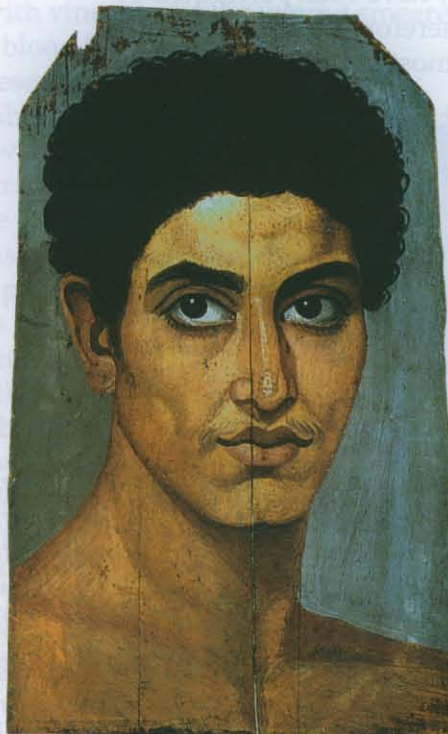
15

Galatēa: fortūna nōbīs favet! nunc maritus meus illi iuveni Helenam dare nōn vult.

humilēs: humilis *low-born, of low class*

libellum: libellus *little book*

Write out the relative clauses in this story and state the noun which each relative clause describes.



Narcissus.

Medicine and science

Soon after its foundation, Alexandria became famous as a centre of science and learning. The Museum and its Library, which were set up and financed by the Greek rulers of Egypt, attracted clever men from all over the Greek world, who quickly began to make discoveries in all the sciences, including medicine. A good beginning had already been made in medicine by the Greek, Hippocrates, who had attempted to remove magic and superstition from the treatment of disease by observing his patients' symptoms carefully and trying to discover their causes. Hippocrates, who lived on the island of Cos in the fifth century BC, was rightly regarded as the founder of medical science. He and his followers pledged themselves to high standards of conduct in the famous Hippocratic oath. Part of it reads as follows:

'Into whatever houses I enter, I will go into them for the benefit of the sick, and will abstain from every voluntary act of mischief and corruption. Whatever in my professional practice I see or hear, which ought not to be spoken abroad, I will not divulge.'

But Hippocrates and his Greek followers usually investigated only the surface of the body and not its interior; this was because the Greeks felt the idea of dissecting a body was disagreeable and perhaps wicked. The Egyptians, however, with their ancient custom of mummifying corpses, had a different attitude to the body, and dissections of corpses may have been performed by Egyptian doctors. Alexandria was therefore a good place for studying anatomy. Herophilus, the most famous Alexandrian



A seal stone carved with a picture of a doctor examining a patient, supervised by Aesculapius, the god of healing.



Alexandrian doctors were particularly expert about the inside of the body, although others had some knowledge. This clay model of the intestines, and models of other body parts, were dedicated to the gods by patients at a healing shrine in Italy.

anatomist, gave a detailed description of the brain, explained the differences between tendons and nerves, arteries and veins, and described the optic nerve and the eye, including the retina. He also measured the frequency of the pulse and used this to diagnose fever. Like earlier doctors, he laid great stress on the importance of hygiene, diet, exercise and bathing.

In addition to general advice of this kind, an experienced doctor of the first century AD would treat minor ailments with drugs. The juice of the wild poppy, which contains opium, was used to relieve pain. Unwashed sheep's wool, containing lanolin, was often applied to wounds and swellings to soothe the irritation. Many prescriptions, however, would have been useless. For example, one account of the treatment of chilblains begins: 'In the first place the chilblains are to be fomented thoroughly with boiled turnips...'. Any benefit felt by the patient would be due not to the turnips, but to the heat of the fomentation or the patient's own belief that the treatment would do him good.

Some prescriptions are rather alarming, such as this for severe toothache: 'When a tooth decays, there is no great need to remove it, but if the pain compels its removal, a peppercorn or an ivy berry should be inserted into the cavity of the tooth, which will then split and fall out in bits.'

Minor surgery was regularly practised: 'Tonsils are covered by a thin layer of skin. If they become hardened after inflammation, they should be scratched round with a finger and drawn out. If they cannot be drawn out in this way they should be gripped with a hook and cut out with a scalpel. The hollow should then be swilled out with vinegar and the wound smeared with something to check the blood.'

Fractures and wounds presented greater problems. Nevertheless, doctors were able to make incisions, tie veins and arteries, reset broken bones with splints, and stitch up wounds. Difficult or very delicate operations were sometimes attempted, such as operations on the eye to relieve cataracts. Amputation of limbs was undertaken as a last resort.

Like Petro in the story on page 134, Greek doctors insisted on high standards of cleanliness in operations, to reduce the risk of infection. Although the quality of medical treatment in the ancient world would naturally vary considerably from one doctor to another, it is probably true that the standards of the best doctors were not improved upon in western Europe until about a hundred and fifty years ago.

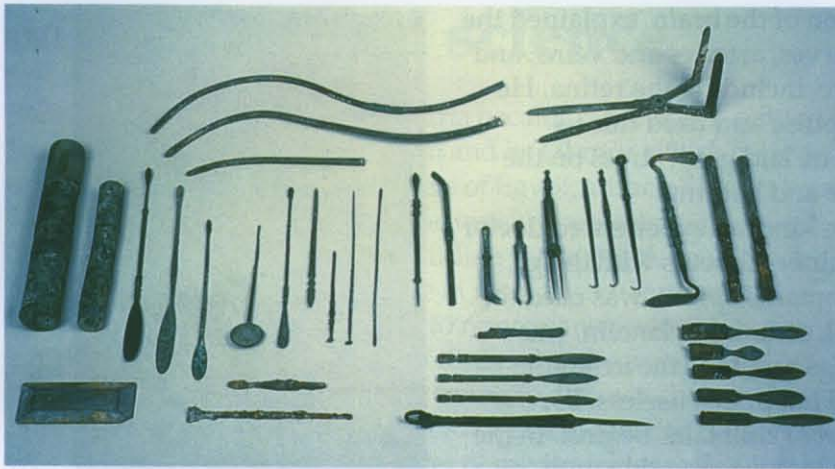
The Museum at Alexandria was also famous for the study of mathematics. Euclid, who worked there in the third century BC, wrote a book known as the *Elements*, in which he summarised all previous knowledge of geometry; it continued to be used as a school textbook until relatively recent times. In applying their mathematical knowledge to the world around them, the Greeks



A set of medical instruments carved on the walls of an Egyptian temple about 25 years after Quintus' visit to Alexandria. In the third row notice the scales for weighing medicines, and the forceps. The cups in the bottom left corner were used to draw off blood.



The bronze cup was heated and its mouth was applied to a patch of skin whose surface had been cut or scratched. As the air in the cup cooled, blood was gently sucked out.



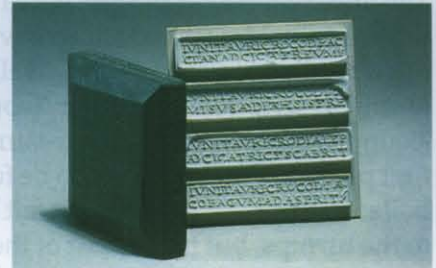
A Roman doctor had a wide range of instruments at his disposal.

at Alexandria reached some very accurate conclusions. For example, Eratosthenes calculated that the circumference of the Earth was 24,662 miles (39,459 km); this is remarkably close to the true figure of 24,860 miles (40,008 km).

Astronomy, which had begun in Babylon, developed further at Alexandria. Astronomers at Alexandria made the first attempts at calculating the distances between the Earth and the Sun and between the Earth and the Moon. The idea was also put forward that the Earth was round, rotated on its axis and circled the Sun with the other planets. After the end of the western Roman Empire in the fifth century AD, this idea was forgotten until Copernicus rediscovered it in the sixteenth century. It is remarkable that Alexandrian astronomers devised their theories



A saw for cutting through bone.



A stamp for labelling cakes of eye ointment and a plaster cast of the impressions of the four sides.

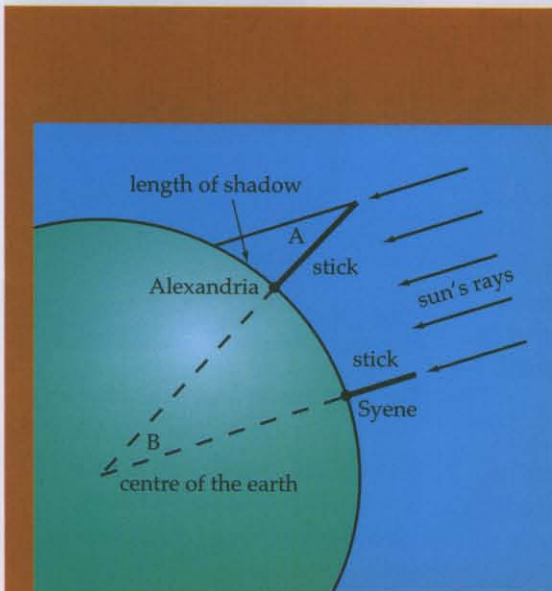


Diagram of Eratosthenes' experiment

Eratosthenes discovered that at Syene (modern Aswan) in southern Egypt the sun was directly overhead at noon on the day of the summer solstice so that a vertical stick cast no shadow. At the same moment, the sun in Alexandria (which Eratosthenes believed was due north of Syene) was not directly overhead, so that a stick in Alexandria did cast a shadow. Eratosthenes measured this shadow and used his measurement to calculate the angle A between the sun's rays and the stick. Since the sun's rays are parallel, angle B is the same as angle A. Knowing angle B and the distance between Syene and Alexandria, he was able to calculate the circumference of the Earth.

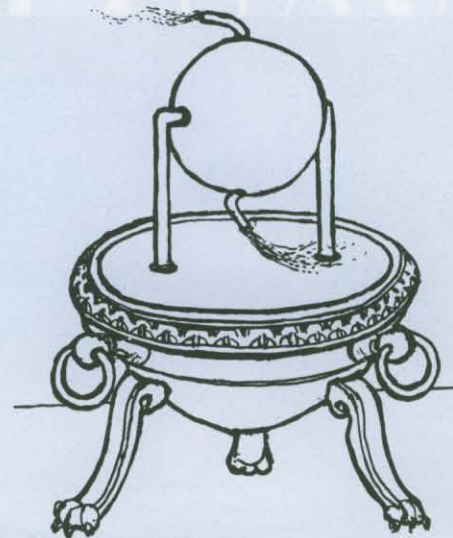


Part of a papyrus treatise on astronomy, written in Greek at Alexandria in the 2nd century BC.

and made their calculations without the aid of telescopes or other accurate instruments.

Hero of Alexandria invented the first steam turbine, in the form of a toy, in which a hollow ball was mounted on two brackets on the lid of a vessel of boiling water. One bracket was hollow and conducted steam from the vessel into the ball. The steam escaped from the ball by means of two bent pipes, thus creating a force which made the ball spin round. He also made a hollow altar, where, when a fire was lit, hot air streamed through four bent pipes to make puppets dance.

However, the Alexandrians did not take advantage of their scientific discoveries to build complicated and powerful machines for use in industry. Perhaps they felt they had no need for such machines, as they had a large work-force of slaves and free men; perhaps they regarded trade and manufacturing as less dignified than scientific research and investigation; or perhaps they were prevented from developing industrial machinery by their lack of technical skills such as the ability to make large metal containers and hold them together by screws and welds. Whatever the reason, some of the discoveries made by the Alexandrians were not put to practical use until many centuries later.



Hero's steam turbine.

Vocabulary checklist 20

adeō, adīre, adī	<i>go up to, approach</i>	relinquō, relinquere, relīquī	<i>leave</i>
arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī	<i>summon, send for</i>	sīcut	<i>like</i>
ars, artis	<i>art</i>	tam	<i>so</i>
crūdēlis	<i>cruel</i>	temptō, temptāre, temptāvī	<i>try</i>
dēnique	<i>at last, finally</i>	vulnus, vulneris	<i>wound</i>
dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī	<i>despair</i>	ūnus	<i>one</i>
doctus, docta, doctum	<i>learned, clever</i>	duo	<i>two</i>
domus, domūs	<i>home</i>	trēs	<i>three</i>
īferō, īferre, intulī	<i>bring in, bring on</i>	quattuor	<i>four</i>
līberō, līberāre, līberāvī	<i>free, set free</i>	quīnque	<i>five</i>
lūna, lūnae	<i>moon</i>	sex	<i>six</i>
mors, mortis	<i>death</i>	septem	<i>seven</i>
oculus, oculī	<i>eye</i>	octō	<i>eight</i>
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī	<i>persuade</i>	novem	<i>nine</i>
pessimus, pessima, pessimum	<i>very bad, worst</i>	decem	<i>ten</i>
		vīgintī	<i>twenty</i>
		trīgintā	<i>thirty</i>
		quadrāgintā	<i>forty</i>
		quīnquāgintā	<i>fifty</i>





LANGUAGE INFORMATION

Contents

Part One: About the language	150
Nouns	150
Adjectives	153
Comparatives and superlatives	154
Pronouns I ego, tū, nōs, vōs, sē	156
Pronouns II hic, ille, eum	158
Pronouns III quī	159
Verbs	160
Irregular verbs	162
Verbs with the dative	164
Word order	165
Longer sentences I with postquam, simulac etc.	167
Longer sentences II	169
Part Two: Vocabulary	170

Part One: About the language

Nouns

gender	first declension	second declension		
SINGULAR	f.	m.	m.	n.
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puella	servus (<i>voc. serve</i>)	puer	templum
<i>accusative</i>	puellam	servum	puerum	templum
<i>genitive (of)</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	templī
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	puellae	servō	puerō	templō
PLURAL				
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	puellae	servī	puerī	
<i>accusative</i>	puellās	servōs	puerōs	
<i>genitive (of)</i>	puellārum	servōrum	puerōrum	
<i>dative (to, for)</i>	puellis	servīs	puerīs	

Notes:

- 1 The vocative case is used when someone is being spoken to:
ubi es, serve? *Where are you, slave?*
- 2 Some 2nd declension nouns such as **puer** have a nominative and vocative singular ending in **-er**. All their other cases are formed like the cases of **servus**.
- 3 1st declension nouns like **puella** are usually feminine.
2nd declension nouns are usually either masculine like **servus**, or neuter like **templum**.
3rd declension nouns may be either masculine like **mercātor**, or feminine like **urbs**, or neuter like **nōmen**.
- 4 Study the two nouns **templum** and **nōmen**. Notice that the forms **templum** and **nōmen** can be either nominative or accusative. This is because **templum** and **nōmen** are *neuter*. Every neuter noun uses the same form for both its nominative and accusative singular. (You have not yet met the nominative and accusative plural of neuter nouns.)

Adjectives

third declension

m.	m.	m.	m.	f.	n.	gender
mercātor	leō	cīvis	rēx	urbs	nōmen	SINGULAR <i>nominative and vocative</i>
mercātōrem	leōnem	cīvem	rēgem	urbem	nōmen	<i>accusative</i>
mercātōris	leōnis	cīvis	rēgis	urbis	nōminis	<i>genitive (of)</i>
mercātōrī	leōnī	cīvī	rēgī	urbī	nōminī	<i>dative (to, for)</i>
mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs		PLURAL <i>nominative and vocative</i>
mercātōrēs	leōnēs	cīvēs	rēgēs	urbēs		<i>accusative</i>
mercātōrum	leōnum	cīvium	rēgum	urbium		<i>genitive (of)</i>
mercātōribus	leōnibus	cīvibus	rēgibus	urbibus		<i>dative (to, for)</i>

- 5 With the help of the noun tables find the Latin for the words in **bold type** in the following sentences.
- We saw the **lion** in the wood.
 - The **slave-girls** were working in the bedroom.
 - Salvius and Quintus gave their presents to the **king**.
 - Many **merchants** travelled to Britain.
 - The master gave a reward to his brave **slaves**.
 - The eruption terrified the **citizens**.
 - The **boy** did not believe his father.
 - Do you like this **city**?
- 6 Translate the following sentences, which contain examples of the dative case.
- Vārica dominō pecūniam trādīdit.
 - rēx uxōrī dōnum compārāvit.
 - imperātor libertīs et cīvibus spectāculum dedit.
 - Salvius vīlicō et agricolae canem ostendit.
 - puer iuvenibus et senī rem nārāvit.
 - ancillae mercātōrī et mīlitibus triclinium parāvērunt.
 - coquus dominō et amicīs respondit.
 - nūntius cīvī et nautae crēdebāt.

7 The **genitive case** is introduced in Stage 17.

puer ad tabernam **Clēmētis** cucurrit.
The boy ran to Clemens' shop.

spectātōrēs clāmābant, sed rēx clāmōrēs **spectātōrum** nōn audīvit.
The spectators were shouting, but the king did not hear the shouts of the spectators.

iuuenis vōcem **fēminae** laudāvit.
The young man praised the woman's voice.

Further examples:

- a Quīntus, quī prope nāvem stābat, vōcēs nautārum audīvit.
- b Īsis erat dea Aegyptia. sacerdōtēs ad templum deae cotīdiē ībant.
- c magna multītūdō mīlitum in viā nōbīs obstābat.
- d clāmōrēs puerōrum senem vexābant.
- e prīncipēs ad aulam rēgis quam celerrimē contendērunt.
- f in villā amīcī meī saepe cēnābam.

8 The following sentences include examples of the cases in the noun tables on pages 150–1. Translate the sentences and then write down the case and number of the nouns in bold type.

- a mercātōrēs Alexandrīnī **nāvēs** spectābant.
- b Clēmēs dōnum pretiōsum **deae** obtulit.
- c **tabernariī**, latrōnibus resistite!
- d domina stolās novās **ancillīs** dedit.
- e hasta caput **mīlitis** percussit.
- f puerum necāvērunt **Aegyptiī**.
- g Augustus illud **templum** aedificāvit.
- h vōcēs **prīncipum** in aulā audīvimus.

Adjectives

- 1 In Stages 14 and 18 you have seen how an adjective changes its endings to agree with the noun it describes in three ways: case, number and gender.
- 2 Most adjectives in Latin belong either to the 1st and 2nd declension or to the 3rd declension. The adjective **bonus** 'good' belongs to the 1st and 2nd declension:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>	<i>neuter</i>	<i>masculine</i>	<i>feminine</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	bonus (<i>voc. bone</i>)	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae
<i>accusative</i>	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās
<i>genitive</i>	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum
<i>dative</i>	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs

Compare the endings of **bonus** with those of the 1st and 2nd declension nouns **servus**, **puella** and **templum** listed on page 150.

- 3 The adjective **fortis** 'brave' belongs to the 3rd declension:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
	<i>masculine and feminine</i>	<i>masculine and feminine</i>
<i>nominative and vocative</i>	fortis	fortēs
<i>accusative</i>	fortem	fortēs
<i>genitive</i>	fortis	fortium
<i>dative</i>	fortī	fortibus

Compare the endings of **fortis** with those of the 3rd declension noun **cīvis** listed on page 151.

- 4 With the help of paragraphs 2 and 3, find the Latin words for 'good' and 'brave' in each of the following sentences.
 - a The merchant praised his good daughter.
 - b The king greeted the brave soldiers.
 - c The good men were working hard.
 - d A brave woman resisted the enemy.
 - e The master gave a reward to the brave boys.
 - f The craftsmen made a statue of the good emperor.
 - g The leader of the brave citizens was wounded.
 - h The father left money to his good wife.

Comparatives and superlatives

- 1 In Stage 8, you met the **superlative** form of the adjective:

Clēmēns est **laetissimus**. coquus est **stultissimus**.
Clemens is very happy. *The cook is very stupid.*

- 2 In Stage 10, you met the **comparative** form:

gladiātor erat **fortior** quam leō. estis **stultiōrēs** quam asinī!
The gladiator was braver than a lion. *You are more stupid than donkeys!*

- 3 Study the way in which the comparative and superlative are formed:

<i>nominative</i>	<i>accusative</i>	<i>comparative</i> (<i>more...</i>)	<i>superlative</i> (<i>very...</i>)
longus <i>long</i>	longum	longior <i>longer</i>	longissimus <i>very long</i>
pulcher <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrum	pulchrior <i>more beautiful</i>	pulcherrimus <i>very beautiful</i>
fortis <i>brave</i>	fortem	fortior <i>braver</i>	fortissimus <i>very brave</i>
ferōx <i>fierce</i>	ferōcem	ferōcior <i>more fierce</i>	ferōcissimus <i>very fierce</i>

- 4 The comparative and superlative forms change their endings in the usual way to indicate case, number and gender:

<i>nominative</i>	leō saevissimus intrāvit. <i>A very fierce lion entered.</i>
<i>accusative</i>	leōnem saevissimum interfēcī. <i>I killed a very fierce lion.</i>
<i>singular</i>	Dumnorix est callidior quam Belimicus. <i>Dumnorix is cleverer than Belimicus.</i>
<i>plural</i>	Rēgnēsēs sunt callidiōrēs quam Canticī. <i>The Regnenses are cleverer than the Canticī.</i>
<i>masculine</i>	dominus meus est irātissimus . <i>My master is very angry.</i>
<i>feminine</i>	uxor mea est irātissima . <i>My wife is very angry.</i>

- 5 Some important adjectives form their comparatives and superlatives in an irregular way:

bonus	melior	optimus
<i>good</i>	<i>better</i>	<i>very good, best</i>

magnus	maior	maximus
<i>big</i>	<i>bigger</i>	<i>very big</i>

and

multus	plūs	plūrimus
<i>much</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>very much</i>

which becomes in the plural:

multi	plūrēs	plūrimī
<i>many</i>	<i>more</i>	<i>very many</i>

- 6 Further examples:

- a leō erat maior quam Herculēs.
- b Clēmēs plūrēs amīcōs quam Eutyclus habēbat.
- c Aristō erat poēta melior quam Barbillus.
- d Quīntus numquam nāvēs maiōrēs vīderat.

- 7 Translate each sentence, then change the adjective in **bold type** into the superlative form, and translate again.

For example: ātrium **magnum** erat. This becomes: ātrium **maximum** erat.
The hall was big. *The hall was very big.*

- a vilicus puerōs **bonōs** laudāvit.
- b **multi** cīvēs in flammīs periērunt.
- c Quīntus servīs **bonīs** libertātem dedit.
- d Herculēs erat **magnum**, et **magnum** fūstem habēbat.

- 8 Translate the first sentence of each pair. Complete the second sentence with the comparative and superlative of the adjective given in brackets at the end of the sentence. Use the first sentence as a guide. Then translate the second sentence.

- a canis est **stultissimus**; canem **stultiōrem** numquam vīdī. (stultus)
 Volūbilis est; servum numquam vīdī. (laetus)
- b frāter meus est sapientior quam tū; sapientissimus est. (sapiēns)
 Bregāns est quam Loquāx; est. (īnsolēns)
- c mīlitēs sunt fortiōrēs quam cīvēs; fortissimī sunt. (fortis)
 servī sunt quam libertī; sunt. (tristis)
- d Melissa vōcem suāvissimam habēbat; vōcem suāviōrem numquam audīvī. (suāvis)
 Caecilius servum habēbat; servum numquam vīdī. (fidēlis)

Pronouns I: ego, tū, nōs, vōs, sē

- 1 In Book I, you met the Latin words for 'I', 'you' (singular), 'me', etc.:

<i>nominative</i>	ego	tū
<i>accusative</i>	mē	tē
<i>dative</i>	mihi	tibi

domina **tē** laudāvit.
The mistress praised you.

senex **mihi** illum equum dedit.
The old man gave that horse to me.

- 2 You also met the words for 'we', 'you' (plural), 'us', etc.:

<i>nominative</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>accusative</i>	nōs	vōs
<i>dative</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs

nōs Rōmānī sumus mīlitēs.
We Romans are soldiers.

dominus **vōs** inspicere vult.
The master wants to inspect you.

- 3 Note the Latin for 'with me', 'with you', etc.:

Salvius **mēcum** ambulābat.
Salvius was walking with me.

Rūfilla **tēcum** sedēbat.
Rufilla was sitting with you.

rēx **nōbīscum** cēnābat.
The king was dining with us.

iuvenēs **vōbīscum** pugnābant?
Were the young men fighting with you?

Compare this with the usual Latin way of saying 'with':

rēx **cum Salviō** ambulābat.
The king was walking with Salvius.

mīlitēs **cum iuvenibus** pugnābant.
The soldiers were fighting with the young men.

- 4 Further examples:

- a ego tibi pecūniam dedī.
- b rēx nōs ad aulam invitāvit.
- c Cogidubnus nōbīscum sedēbat.
- d cūr mē vituperās?
- e nōs ancillae semper labōrāmus.
- f necesse est vōbīs mēcum venīre.
- g vōs Quīntō crēditis, sed Salvius mihi crēdit.
- h tē pūnīre possum, quod ego sum dominus.

- 5 The words **ego**, **tū**, etc. belong to a group of words known as **pronouns**. Pronouns are used in sentences in a very similar way to nouns. For example, this sentence uses the noun 'Salvius':

Salvius est dominus. *Salvius is the master.*

But if Salvius himself were the speaker of the sentence, he would not use the noun 'Salvius' but the pronoun **ego**:

ego sum dominus. *I am the master.*

And somebody speaking to Salvius would replace the noun 'Salvius' with the pronoun **tū**:

tū es dominus *You are the master.*

- 6 You have also met the pronoun **sē**, meaning 'himself', 'herself' or 'themselves'. It has the same form for both singular and plural, and it has no nominative case:

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
accusative	sē	sē
dative	sibi	sibi

Dumnorix in ursam **sē** coniēcit.
*Dumnorix hurled **himself** at the bear.*

servī in ordinēs longōs **sē** instrūxērunt.
*The slaves drew **themselves** up in long lines.*

rēgīna **sē** interfēcit.
*The queen killed **herself**.*

mercātor **sibi** villam ēmit.
*The merchant bought the house **for himself**.*

Pronouns II: hic, ille, eum

- 1 In Stage 19, you met the following forms of the word **hic** meaning 'this' (plural 'these'):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine
nominative	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae
accusative	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās

hae stolae sunt sordidae!
These dresses are dirty!

hunc servum pūnīre volō.
*I want to punish **this** slave.*

- 2 You have also met the following forms of the word **ille** meaning 'that' (plural 'those'):

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine
nominative	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae
accusative	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās

illa taberna nunc est mea.
That shop is now mine.

spectā **illōs** hominēs!
*Look at **those** men!*

- 3 In Stage 20, the following forms of the word for 'him', 'her' and 'them' were listed:

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	masculine	feminine	masculine	feminine
accusative	eum	eam	eōs	eās
genitive	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum
dative	eī	eī	eīs	eīs

iuvenēs **eam** laudāvērunt.
*The young men praised **her**.*

ego ad villam **eius** contendi.
*I hurried to **his** house.*

dominus **eī** praemium dedit.
*The master gave a reward **to him**.*

senex **eīs** crēdere nōluit.
*The old man was unwilling to trust **them**.*

- 4 The various forms of the word **ille** can also be used to mean 'he', 'him' (masculine), 'she', 'her' (feminine), 'they', 'them' (plural):

ille tamen nōn erat perterritus.
***He**, however, was not terrified.*

nēmō **illam** in urbe vīdit.
*No one saw **her** in the city.*

Pronouns III: quī

- 1 In Stages 15 and 16, you met various forms of the **relative pronoun quī**, which is placed at the start of a relative clause and means 'who', 'which', etc.:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	masculine	feminine	neuter	masculine	feminine
nominative	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae
accusative	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās

ursa, **quam** Quīntus vulnerāvit, nunc mortua est.
The bear which Quintus wounded is now dead.

ubi est templum, **quod** Augustus Caesar aedificāvit?
Where is the temple which Augustus Caesar built?

in mediō ātriō stābant milītēs, **quī** rēgem custodiēbant.
In the middle of the hall stood the soldiers, who were guarding the king.

The noun described by a relative clause is known as the **antecedent** of the relative pronoun. For example, in the first Latin sentence above, **ursa** is the antecedent of **quam**.

- 2 Translate the following sentences.

- a flōrēs, quī in hortō erant, rēgem delectāvērunt.
- b puer, quem Aegyptiī interfēcērunt, Quīntum fortiter dēfendēbat.
- c fabrī, quōs rēx ex Italiā arcessiverat, effigiem Claudiī fēcērunt.
- d cubiculum, quod Quīntus intrāvit, ēlegantissimum erat.

In each sentence pick out the antecedent and the relative pronoun.

- 3 The following sentences include the different pronouns described on pages 156–9.

- a postquam senex hoc dīxit, Barbillus eum laudāvit.
- b in palaestrā erant multī āthlētae, quī sē exercēbant.
- c quamquam puellae prope mē stābant, eās vidēre nōn poteram.
- d illud est vīnum, quod Cogidubnus ex Italiā importāvit.
- e simulac mercātōrēs advēnērunt, Clēmēs eis pecūniam trādīdit.
- f dā mihi illum fūstem!
- g milītēs, quōs imperātor miserat, nōbīscum sedēbant.
- h Barbillus hās statuās sibi ēmit.
- i rēgīna, quae tē honōrāvit, nōs vituperāvit.
- j simulac latrō hanc tabernam intrāvit, vōcem eius audīvī.

Verbs II: hic, ille, eurus :III ανουοηϳ

	<i>first conjugation</i>	<i>second conjugation</i>	<i>third conjugation</i>	<i>fourth conjugation</i>
PRESENT TENSE	<i>I carry, you carry, etc.</i> portō portās portat portāmus portātis portant	<i>I teach, you teach, etc.</i> doceō docēs docet docēmus docētis docent	<i>I drag, you drag, etc.</i> trahō trahis trahit trahimus trahitis trahunt	<i>I hear, you hear, etc.</i> audiō audīs audit audīmus audītis audiunt
IMPERFECT TENSE	<i>I was carrying</i> portābam portābās portābat portābāmus portābātis portābant	<i>I was teaching</i> docēbam docēbās docēbat docēbāmus docēbātis docēbant	<i>I was dragging</i> trahēbam trahēbās trahēbat trahēbāmus trahēbātis trahēbant	<i>I was hearing</i> audiēbam audiēbās audiēbat audiēbāmus audiēbātis audiēbant
PERFECT TENSE	<i>I (have) carried</i> portāvī portāvistī portāvit portāvimus portāvistis portāvērunt	<i>I (have) taught</i> docuī docuistī docuit docuimus docuistis docuērunt	<i>I (have) dragged</i> trāxī trāxistī trāxit trāximus trāxistis trāxērunt	<i>I (have) heard</i> audīvī audīvistī audīvit audīvimus audīvistis audīvērunt
PLUPERFECT TENSE	<i>I had carried</i> portāveram portāverās portāverat portāverāmus portāverātis portāverant	<i>I had taught</i> docueram docuerās docuerat docuerāmus docuerātis docuerant	<i>I had dragged</i> trāxeram trāxerās trāxerat trāxerāmus trāxerātis trāxerant	<i>I had heard</i> audīveram audīverās audīverat audīverāmus audīverātis audīverant
INFINITIVE	<i>to carry</i> portāre	<i>to teach</i> docēre	<i>to drag</i> trahere	<i>to hear</i> audire
IMPERATIVE	<i>carry!</i> portā portāte	<i>teach!</i> docē docēte	<i>drag!</i> trahe trahite	<i>hear!</i> audi audite

- 1 Translate the following examples:

portābant; portāvimus; trahēbās; trahitis;
docuērunt; audīvī; portābāmus; docuistī

- 2 Translate the following examples, then change them to mean 'I ...' instead of 'he ...' and translate again.

trahēbat; audīvit; docet;
intrāvit; dormiēbat; sedet

- 3 Translate the following examples, then change them from the plural to the singular, so that they mean 'you (singular) ...' instead of 'they...', and translate again.

portāvērunt; trahunt; audīverant; manēbant; laudant; intellēxērunt

Persons and endings

- 1 The forms of the verb which indicate 'I', 'you' (singular) and 'he' (or 'she' or 'it') are known as **1st, 2nd and 3rd person singular**.
The forms which indicate 'we', 'you' (plural) and 'they' are known as the **1st, 2nd and 3rd person plural**.

The following table summarises the Latin verb endings and the English translations which are used to indicate the different persons:

English		Latin verb ending	
		PRESENT	PERFECT
		IMPERFECT	
		PLUPERFECT	
<i>I</i>	1st person singular	-ō or -m	-ī
<i>you</i>	2nd person singular	-s	-istī
<i>he, she, it</i>	3rd person singular	-t	-it
<i>we</i>	1st person plural	-mus	-imus
<i>you</i>	2nd person plural	-tis	-istis
<i>they</i>	3rd person plural	-nt	-ērunt

So a word like **trāxerant** can be either translated (*they had dragged*) or described (3rd person plural pluperfect). Two further examples, **portāvī** and **docent**, are translated and described as follows:

portāvī	<i>I carried</i>	1st person singular perfect
docent	<i>they teach</i>	3rd person plural present

- 2 Describe and translate the following examples.

trāxī; audīs; portābāmus; docuerant; ambulāvistī; dixerat

Irregular verbs

PRESENT TENSE	<i>I am</i> sum es est sumus estis sunt	<i>I am able</i> possum potes potest possumus potestis possunt	<i>I want</i> volō vīs vult volumus vultis volunt	<i>I bring</i> ferō fers fert ferimus fertis ferunt
IMPERFECT TENSE	<i>I was</i> eram erās erat erāmus erātis erant	<i>I was able</i> poteram poterās poterat poterāmus poterātis poterant	<i>I was wanting</i> volēbam volēbās volēbat volēbāmus volēbātis volēbant	<i>I was bringing</i> ferēbam ferēbās ferēbat ferēbāmus ferēbātis ferēbant
PERFECT TENSE		<i>I have been able</i> potuī potuistī potuit potuimus potuistis potuērunt	<i>I (have) wanted</i> voluī voluistī voluit voluimus voluistis voluērunt	<i>I (have) brought</i> tulī tulistī tulit tulimus tulistis tulērunt
PLUPERFECT TENSE		<i>I had been able</i> potueram potuerās potuerat potuerāmus potuerātis potuerant	<i>I had wanted</i> volueram voluerās voluerat voluerāmus voluerātis voluerant	<i>I had brought</i> tuleram tulerās tulerat tulerāmus tulerātis tulerant
INFINITIVE	<i>to be</i> esse	<i>to be able</i> posse	<i>to want</i> velle	<i>to bring</i> ferre

- 1 Notice the difference between the present and perfect tenses of **ferō**:

ferō I bring tulī I brought

Compare this with the way the word 'go' changes in English:

I go, you go, etc. I went, you went, etc.

- 2 The verbs **absum** (*I am absent*) and **adsum** (*I am present*) are formed by adding **ab** and **ad** to the forms of **sum**. For example:

<i>est</i>	<i>he is</i>	<i>adest</i>	<i>he is present</i>	<i>abest</i>	<i>he is absent</i>
<i>erat</i>	<i>he was</i>	<i>aderat</i>	<i>he was present</i>	<i>aberat</i>	<i>he was absent</i>

- 3 Translate the following examples.

<i>es</i>	<i>ades</i>	<i>ferunt</i>
<i>poterāmus</i>	<i>aberant</i>	<i>voluistī</i>
<i>tulit</i>	<i>sumus</i>	<i>ferēbātis</i>
<i>vīs</i>	<i>aderātis</i>	<i>abesse</i>

Verbs with the dative

- 1 In Book I, you met a number of verbs, such as **faveō** and **crēdō**, which are often used with a noun in the dative case. For example:

mercātōrēs **Holcōniō** favēbant.

The merchants gave their support to Holconius.

or *The merchants supported Holconius.*

- 2 You have now met some other verbs which are used in the same way:

turba **nōbīs** obstat.

The crowd is an obstacle to us.

or *The crowd is obstructing us.*

Clēmēns **latrōnibus** resistēbat.

Clemens put up a resistance to the thugs.

or *Clemens resisted the thugs.*

- 3 Further examples:

a Barbillus Quīntō cōnfidēbat.

b mīlitibus resistere nōn potuimus.

c tandem filiū māt̄rī persuāsit.

d sacerdotēs lentē templō appropinquāvērunt.

Word order

The word order in the following sentences is very common:

- 1 clāmābant Rēgnēsēs. intrāvit Cogidubnus.
The Regnenses were shouting. Cogidubnus entered.

Further examples:

- a lacrimābant ancillae. c dormiēbat rēx.
b labōrābat Clēmēs. d rīdēbant puerī.

- 2 amīcum salūtāvit. ancillās laudāvimus.
He greeted his friend. We praised the slave-girls.

Further examples:

- a cēnam parābant. c pecūniam invēnit.
b dominōs audīvimus. d mātrem vīdistis?

The following word orders are also found:

- 3 discum petēbat āthlēta. nautās vituperābat Belimicus.
The athlete was looking for the discus. Belimicus was cursing the sailors.

Further examples:

- a amphoram portābat vīlicus. c gladiātōrēs laudāvit nūntius.
b vīnum bibēbant prīncipēs. d rosās spargēbant puellae.

- 4 mercātōrem rēx dēcēpit. equum agricola vēndidit.
The king deceived the merchant. The farmer sold the horse.

Further examples:

- a fēminās dominus spectābat. c poētās rēgīna honōrāvit.
b leōnem gladiātōr interfēcit. d templum sacerdōs intrāvit.

- 5 The following sentences include all the different sorts of word order used in paragraphs 1–4:

- a surrēxērunt prīncipēs. d rēgem cīvēs vīdērunt.
b togam gerēbat. e mē dēcēpistī.
c multītūdinem incitābat senex. f fīlium pater vituperābat.

- 6 The following examples each contain a noun in the dative case:

nūntiō epistulam dedī.
I gave a letter to the messenger.

amicīs crēdēbat.
He believed his friends.

Further examples:

a mercātōrī pecūniam reddidit.

c dominō resistēbant.

b mīlitibus cibum parāvī.

d tibi faveō.

Longer sentences I: with **postquam**, **simulac**, etc.

- 1 In Book I you met sentences like this:

Salvius, postquam fundum inspexit, ad villam revēnit.
Salvius, after he inspected the farm, returned to the house.

Or, in more natural English:

After Salvius inspected the farm, he returned to the house.

- 2 You also met sentences which are like the one above but also contain a noun in the dative case. For example:

Rūfilla, postquam Salviō rem nārrāvit, exiit.
Rufilla, after she told the story to Salvius, went out.

Or, in more natural English:

After Rufilla told Salvius the story, she went out.

- 3 Further examples:

- a geminī, postquam coquō cibum trādiderunt, ē culinā discesserunt.
- b nūntius, postquam civibus spectāculum nūntiāvit, ad tabernam festināvit.
- c rēx, postquam gladiātōrī pecūniam dedit, leōnem mortuum inspexit.

- 4 You have now met sentences with **quamquam** and **simulac**. Study the following examples:

- a Pompēius custōdēs interfēcit.
Pompeius killed the guards.
Pompēius, quamquam invītus erat, custōdēs interfēcit.
Pompeius, although he was unwilling, killed the guards.

Or, in more natural English:

Although Pompeius was unwilling, he killed the guards.

- b puer ē tricliniō contendit.
The boy hurried out of the dining-room.

simulac Salvius signum dedit, puer ē tricliniō contendit.
As soon as Salvius gave the signal, the boy hurried out of the dining-room.

5 Further examples:

- a coquus fūrem cōspexit.
coquus, simulac vīllam intrāvit, fūrem cōspexit.
- b Salvius nōn erat contentus.
Salvius, quamquam servī dīligerter labōrābant, nōn erat contentus.
- c Quīntus 'ecce!' clāmāvit.
simulac nāvem vīdit, Quīntus 'ecce!' clāmāvit.
- d nūntius ad templum cucurrit.
nūntius, quamquam fessus erat, ad templum cucurrit.

6 The following examples are different types of longer sentences.
Translate them.

- a amīcī, simulac tabernam vīdērunt dīreptam, ad Clēmētem cucurrērunt.
- b ubi Salvius revēnit irātus, Bregāns fūgit.
- c imperātor, postquam gladiātōribus libertātem dedit, ex amphitheātrō exiit.
- d Clēmēns, quod Eutyclus tabernae iam appropinquābat, amīcōs arcessīvit.

7 Complete each sentence with the most suitable group of words
from the box below, and then translate. Use each group of words
once only.

ubi saxō appropinquant
quamquam ancilla dīligerter labōrābat
simulac sacerdotēs ē cellā templī prōcessērunt
postquam hospiti cubiculum ostendit
ubi iuvenēs laetī ad theātrum contendērunt
quod turbam īnfestam audīre poterat

- a, domina nōn erat contenta.
- b necesse est nautīs,, cursum tenēre rēctum.
- c puer timēbat ē casā exīre,
- d, tacuērunt omnēs.
- e māter,, cibum in culinā gustāvit.
- f, senex in tablinō manēbat occupātus.

Longer sentences II

- 1 You have met several examples of this kind of sentence:

Rēgnēsēs erant laetī, Canticī miserī.
The Regnenses were happy, the Cantici were miserable.

Britannī cibum laudāvērunt, Rōmānī vīnum.
The Britons praised the food, the Romans praised the wine.

- 2 Further examples:

- a ūnus servus est fūr, cēterī innocentēs.
b Canticī Belimicum spectābant, Rēgnēsēs Dumnorigem.

- 3 The following examples are slightly different:

sacerdōs templum, poēta tabernam quaerēbat.
The priest was looking for a temple, the poet was looking for an inn.

iuvenis Aegyptius, senex Graecus erat.
The young man was Egyptian, the old man was Greek.

- 4 Further examples:

- a Clēmēs attonitus, Quīntus irātus erat.
b mercātor stolās, caupō vīnum vēndēbat.
c puer ad hortum, ancillae ad ātrium ruērunt.
d Galatēa deam, iuvenēs Helenam spectābant.

Part Two: Vocabulary

Longer sentences II

- 1 Nouns are listed in the following way:

the nominative case, e.g. **servus** (*slave*);
the genitive case, e.g. **servī** (*of a slave*); this is explained in Stage 17;
the gender of the noun (m. = masculine, f. = feminine, n. = neuter);
this is explained in Stage 18.

So, if the following forms are given:

pāx, pācis, f. *peace*

pāx means *peace*, **pācis** means *of peace*, and the word is feminine.

- 2 Find the meaning of the following.

- a **umerus, umerī**
- b **seges, segetis**
- c **scapha, scaphae**

- 3 Find the meaning and the gender of the following words, some of which are in the nominative case and some in the genitive.

- a **taurus**
- b **flūminis**
- c **hastae**
- d **tempestātis**
- e **dolor**
- f **praedīi**

- 4 Using both **About the language** pp.150–1 and the **Vocabulary**, translate the following.

- a **leō; servō**
- b **cīvī; domini**
- c **flōris; fabrīs**
- d **amīcī; iuvenī**

- 5 Adjectives are listed in the following way:

1st and 2nd declension adjectives are listed with the masculine, feminine and neuter forms of the nominative singular, e.g. **bonus, bona, bonum**.

3rd declension adjectives are usually given in the nominative masculine singular, e.g. **fortis, tristis**. Sometimes the genitive singular (which is the same for all genders) is added, e.g. **ferōx, gen. ferōcis; ingēns, gen. ingentis**.

6 Verbs are usually listed in the following way:

parō, parāre, parāvī *prepare*

The first form listed (**parō**) is the 1st person singular of the present tense (*I prepare*).

The second form (**parāre**) is the infinitive (*to prepare*).

The third form (**parāvī**) is the 1st person singular of the perfect tense (*I prepared*).

So, if the following forms are given:

āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī *lose*

āmittō means *I lose*, **āmittere** means *to lose*, **āmīsī** means *I lost*.

7 Find the meaning of the following.

a susurrō; susurrāre; susurrāvī.

b agō; agere; ēgī.

c haereō; impedire; importāvī; vibrāre; interfēcī.

8 Find the meaning of the following.

a tenēmus; tenuimus

b circumspectāvērunt; circumspectant

c tangō; tetigī

d quaesīvistī; quaerēbās

e mittit; mīsīt

f faciēbātis; fēcistī

9 All words which are given in the **Vocabulary checklists** for Stages 1–20 are marked with an asterisk(*).

a

* ā, ab	from; by	amīca, amīcae, f.	friend (female)
* abeō, abīre, abīi	go away	amicē	in a friendly way
abiciō, abicere, abiēcī	throw away	* amīcus, amīcī, m.	friend (male)
* absum, abesse, āfuī	be out, be absent	* āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī	lose
accidō, accidere, accidī	happen	* amō, amāre, amāvī	love, like
* accipiō, accipere, accēpī	accept, take in, receive	amphora, amphorae, f.	wine-jar
accurrēns, gen. accurrentis	running up	amulētum, amulētī, n.	amulet, lucky charm
acētum, acētī, n.	vinegar	* ancilla, ancillae, f.	slave-girl, maid
* ad	to, at	animal, animālis, n.	animal
* adeō, adīre, adīi	approach, go up to	* animus, animī, m.	spirit, soul, mind
adeō	so much, so greatly	animus recipere	recover consciousness
adest see adsum		anteā	before
adiuvō, adiuuāre, adiuvī	help	antīquus, antīqua,	
administrāns,		antīquum	old, ancient
gen. administrantis	looking after, managing	* ānulus, ānulī, m.	ring
administrō, administrāre,		anus, anūs, f.	old woman
administrāvī	look after, manage	anxius, anxia, anxium	anxious
admittō, admittere,		aperiō, aperīre, aperuī	open
admīsī	admit, let in	appāreō, appārere,	
adōrō, adōrāre, adōrāvī	worship	appāruī	appear
* adsum, adesse, adfuī	be here, be present	* appropinquō, appropinquāre,	
adveniēns,		appropinquāvī	approach, come near to
gen. advenientis	arriving	* apud	among, at the house of
* adveniō, advenīre, advēnī	arrive	* aqua, aquae, f.	water
* aedificium, aedificiū, n.	building	aquila, aquilae, f.	eagle
* aedificō, aedificāre,		* āra, ārae, f.	altar
aedificāvī	build	arānea, arāneae, f.	spider's web
* aeger, aegra, aegrum	sick, ill	arātor, arātōris, m.	ploughman
Aegyptius, Aegyptia,		arca, arcae, f.	strong-box, chest
Aegyptium	Egyptian	* arcessō, arcessere,	
Aegyptus, Aegyptī, f.	Egypt	arcessivī	summon, send for
aēneus, aēnea, aēneum	made of bronze	ardeō, ardēre, arsi	burn, be on fire
Aethiopes,		ārea, ārae, f.	courtyard
Aethiopum, m.pl.	Ethiopians	argenteus, argentea,	
affligō, affligere, afflixī	afflict, hurt	argenteum	made of silver
ager, agrī, m.	field	armārium, armāriī, n.	chest, cupboard
agilis	agile, nimble	* ars, artis, f.	art, skill
* agitō, agitāre, agitāvī	chase, hunt	ascendō, ascendere,	
* agmen, agminis, n.	column (of men), procession	ascendī	climb, rise
* agnōscō, agnōscere,		asinus, asinī, m.	ass, donkey
agnōvī	recognise	assiduē	continually
agnus, agnī, m.	lamb	astrologus, astrologī, m.	astrologer
* agō, agere, ēgī	do, act	Athēnae, Athēnārum, f.pl.	Athens
age!	come on!	Athēniēnsis	Athenian
* grātiās agere	thank, give thanks	āthlēta, āthlētae, m.	athlete
negōtium agere	do business, work	ātrium, ātriī, n.	atrium, main room, hall
quid agis?	how are you?	* attonitus, attonita,	
* agricola, agricolae, m.	farmer	attonitum	astonished
Alexandrīnus, Alexandrīna,		* audeō, audēre	dare
Alexandrīnum	Alexandrian	* audiō, audīre, audīvī	hear, listen to
aliquandō	sometimes	* aula, aulae, f.	palace
* aliquid	something	aurātus, aurāta, aurātum	gilded, gold-plated
* alius, alia, aliud	other, another, else	aureus, aurea, aureum	golden, made of gold
* alter, altera, alterum	the other, the second	aureus, aureī, m.	gold coin
ambulāns,		auris, auris, f.	ear
gen. ambulantis	walking	* auxiliium, auxiliī, n.	help
* ambulō, ambulāre,		avārus, avāra, avārum	mean, miserly
ambulāvī	walk	avārus, avārī, m.	miser
		avidus, avida, avidum	eager

b

bālō, bālāre, bālāvī	bleat
* bene	well
* benignus, benigna, benignum	kind
bēstia, bēstiae, f.	wild beast
* bibō, bibere, bibī	drink
* bonus, bona, bonum	good
Britannī,	
Britannōrum, m.pl.	Britons
Britannia, Britanniae, f.	Britain
Britannicus, Britannica, Britannicum	British

c

cachinnāns, gen. cachinnantis	laughing, cackling
cachinnō, cachinnāre, cachinnāvī	laugh, cackle, roar with laughter
cachinnus, cachinnī, m.	laughter
caedō, caedere, cecīdī	kill
caerimōnia, caerimōniae, f.	ceremony
calcō, calcāre, calcāvī	tread on
* callidus, callida, callidum	clever, cunning
candēlābrum, candēlābrī, n.	lamp-stand, candelabrum
* canis, canis, m.	dog
canistrum, canistrī, n.	basket
cantāns, gen. cantantis	singing
* cantō, cantāre, cantāvī	sing, chant
capillī, capillōrum, m.pl.	hair
* capiō, capere, cēpī	take, catch, capture
cōnsilium capere	make a plan, have an idea
captus, capta, captum	taken, caught, captured
* caput, capitis, n.	head
* carnifex, carnificis, m.	executioner
* cārus, cāra, cārum	dear
casa, casae, f.	small house
caudex, caudicis, m.	blockhead, idiot
caupō, caupōnis, m.	innkeeper
cautē	cautiously
cecīdī see caedō	
cēdō, cēdere, cessī	give in, give way
celebrō, celebrāre, celebrāvī	celebrate
* celeriter	quickly
celerrimē	very quickly
quam celerrimē	as quickly as possible
cella, cellae, f.	sanctuary
cellārius, cellāriī, m.	steward
* cēna, cēnae, f.	dinner
* cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī	dine, have dinner
centum	a hundred

cēpī see capiō	
cēra, cērae, f.	wax, wax tablet
cērātus, cērāta, cērātum	wax, made of wax
certāmen, certāminis, n.	struggle, contest
certāmen nāvāle	boat-race
certō, certāre, certāvī	compete
certus, certa, certum	certain, infallible
cessī see cēdō	
* cēterī, cēterae, cētera	the others, the rest
* cibus, cibī, m.	food
circum	around
* circumspectō, circumspectāre, circumspectāvī	look round
circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī	surround
citharoedus, citharoedī, m.	cithara player
* cīvis, cīvis, m. f.	citizen
clādēs, clādīs, f.	disaster
clam	secretly, in private
clāmāns, gen. clāmantis	shouting
* clāmō, clāmāre, clāmāvī	shout
* clāmor, clāmōris, m.	shout, uproar
claudicō, claudicāre, claudicāvī	be lame, limp
* claudō, claudere, clausī	shut, close, block
* coepī	I began
* cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī	think, consider
* cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī	get to know, find out
collēctus, collēcta, collēctum	gathered, assembled
colligō, colligere, collēgī	gather, collect, assemble
collocō, collocāre, collocāvī	place, put
columba, columbae, f.	dove
cōmis	polite, courteous, friendly
cōmiter	politely, courteously
commemorō, commemorāre, commemorāvī	talk about
* commodus, commoda, commodum	convenient
commōtus, commōta, commōtum	moved, alarmed, excited, distressed
* comparō, comparāre, comparāvī	obtain
competitor, competitōris, m.	competitor
* compleō, complēre, complēvī	fill
compōnō, compōnere, composuī	put together, arrange, mix, make up
condūcō, condūcere, condūxī	hire
cōnfectus, cōnfecta, cōnfectum	finished
* cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī	finish
cōnfidō, cōnfidere	trust
coniciō, conicere, conicēī	hurl, throw

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī sē coniungere	join join
coniūrātiō, coniūrātiōnis, f. coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī	plot, conspiracy plot, conspire
cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendī	embark on, go on board
cōnsciūs, cōnsciī, m. cōnsecrō, cōnsecrāre, cōnsecrāvī	accomplice dedicate
* cōnsentiō, cōnsentire, cōnsēnsī	agree
cōnserō, cōnserere, cōnseruī	stitch
cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī	sit down
* cōnsiliū, cōnsiliī, n. cōnsiliū capere	plan, idea make a plan, have an idea
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstīfī	stand one's ground, stand firm
* cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexī	catch sight of
* cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī	eat
* contendō, contendere, contendī	hurry
contentiō, contentiōnis, f.	argument
* contentus, contenta, contentum	satisfied
contrōversia, contrōversiae, f.	debate
* conveniō, convenire, convēnī	come together, gather, meet
convertō, convertere, convertī sē convertere	turn turn
* coquō, coquere, coxī	cook
* coquus, coquī, m. corōna, corōnae, f.	cook garland, wreath
* cotīdiē	every day
* crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī crīnēs, crīnium, m.pl.	trust, believe, have faith in hair
crocodīlus, crocodīlī, m.	crocodile
* crūdēlis	cruel
* cubiculum, cubiculī, n. cucurrī see currō	bedroom
culīna, culīnae, f.	kitchen
* cum	with
* cupiō, cupere, cupīvī	want
* cūr?	why?
cūra, cūrae, f.	care
* cūrō, cūrāre, cūrāvī nihīl cūrō	look after, supervise I don't care
currēns, gen. currentis	running
* currō, currere, cucurrī	run
cursus, cursūs, m.	course
* custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivī	guard

* custōs, custōdis, m. cutis, cutis, m.	guard skin
--	---------------

d

dare see dō	
* dē	from, down from; about
* dea, deae, f.	goddess
* dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī	owe, ought, should, must
* decem	ten
dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī	fall down
dēcipiō, dēcipere, dēcēpī	deceive, fool
* decōrus, decōra, decōrum	right, proper
dedī see dō	
dēfendēns, gen. dēfendentis	defending
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī	defend
dēiciō, dēicere, dēiēcī	throw down, throw
* deinde	then
* dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī	delight, please
* dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī	destroy
dēliciae, dēliciārum, f.pl. dēligātus, dēligāta, dēligātum	darling tied up, moored
dēligō, dēligāre, dēligāvī	bind, tie, tie up
* dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī	point out, show
dēnārius, m.	a denarius (coin)
* dēnique	at last, finally
dēpellō, dēpellere, dēpulī	drive off
dēplōrāns, gen. dēplōrantis	complaining about
dēplōrō, dēplōrāre, dēplōrāvī	complain about
dērideō, dēridere, dērisī	mock, jeer at
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī	come down
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī	desert
dēsertus, dēserta, in dēsertis	deserted in the desert
dēsiliō, dēsiliire, dēsiluī	jump down
dēspērāns, gen. dēspērantis	despairing
* dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī	despair
dēstringō, dēstringere, dēstrīnxī	draw out
* deus, deī, m.	god
dexter, dextra, dextrum	right
ad dextram	to the right
diadēma, diadēmatis, n.	diadem, crown
* dīcō, dīcere, dīxī	say
dictō, dictāre, dictāvī	dictate
* diēs, diēī, m.	day

diēs fēstus, diēi fēsti, m.	festival, holiday
* difficilis	difficult
dignitās, dignitātis, f.	dignity
* diligenter	carefully
dīmīttō, dīmīttēre, dīmīsī	send away, dismiss
dīreptus, dīrepta, dīreptum	pulled apart, ransacked
dīrigō, dīrigere, dīrēxī	steer
dīripīō, dīripere, dīripuī	pull apart, ransack
dīrus, dīra, dīrum	dreadful
discēdēns, gen. discēdentis	leaving, departing
* discēdō, discēdere, discessī	depart, leave
discus, discī, m.	discus
dissecō, dissecāre, dissecuī	cut up
dissectus, dissecta, dissectum	cut up, dismembered
* diū	for a long time
diūtius	any longer
dīves, gen. dīvitis	rich
dixī see dīcō	
* dō, dare, dedī	give
doceō, docēre, docuī	teach
* doctus, docta, doctum	learned, educated, skilful, clever
dolor, dolōris, m.	pain
* domina, dominae, f.	mistress, madam
* dominus, dominī, m.	master
* domus, domūs, f. domī	home at home
domum redīre	return home
* dōnum, dōnī, n.	present, gift
* dormiō, dormīre, dormīvī	sleep
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī	be doubtful
dubium, dubiī, n.	doubt
* dūcō, dūcere, dūxī	lead, take
dulcis	sweet
mī dulcissime!	my dear fellow!
* duo	two
dūrus, dūra, dūrum	hard, harsh

e

* ē, ex	from, out of
eam	her, it
eārum	their
eās	them
* ecce!	see! look!
effigiēs, effigiēi, f.	image, statue
effluō, effluere, effluxī	pour out, flow out
effodiō, effodere, effōdī	dig
effringō, effringere, effrēgī	break down
* effugiō, effugere, effūgī	escape
effundō, effundere, effūdī	pour out

ēgī see agō	
* ego, meī mēcum	I, me with me
ehem!	well, well!
* ēheu!	oh dear! oh no!
eī	to him, to her, to it
eīs	to them, for them
eius	his
ēlegāns, gen. ēlegantis	tasteful, elegant
ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī	choose
ēlūdō, ēlūdere, ēlūsī	slip past
* ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmisī	throw, send out
* emō, emere, emī	buy
ēmoveō, ēmovēre, ēmōvī	move, clear away
enim	for
eō	it
* eō, ire, iī	go
eōrum	their
eōs	them
* epistula, epistulae, f.	letter
eques, equitis, m.	horseman
equitō, equitāre, equitāvī	ride
* equus, equī, m.	horse
eram see sum	
ērubēscēns, gen. ērubēscēntis	blushing
ērumpō, ērumpere, ērūpī	break away
est see sum	
* et	and
* etiam	even
euge!	hurray!
* eum	him, it
ēvellēns, gen. ēvellēntis	wrenching off
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī	overturn
ēvolō, ēvolāre, ēvolāvī	fly out
ēvulsus, ēvulsa, ēvulsūm	wrenched off
* ex, ē	from, out of
exanimātus, exanimāta, exanimātum	unconscious
* excitō, excitāre, excitāvī	arouse, wake up
exclāmāns, gen. exclāmantis	exclaiming, shouting
* exclāmō, exclāmāre, exclāmāvī	exclaim, shout
* exeō, exīre, exiī	go out
exerceō, exercēre, exercuī	practise, exercise
exercitus, exercitūs, m.	army
expellō, expellere, expulī	throw out
exquisītus, exquisīta, exquisītum	special
exspectātus, exspectāta, exspectātum	welcome
* exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī	wait for
extendō, extendere, extendī	stretch out
extorqueō, extorquēre, extorsī	extort
extrā	outside
extrahō, extrahere, extrāxī	pull out, take out

f

* faber, fabrī, m.	craftsman
* fābula, fābulae, f.	story, play
* facile	easily
* facilis	easy
* faciō, facere, fēcī	make, do
familiāris, familiāris, m.	relation, relative
familiārīter	closely, intimately
* faveō, favēre, fāvī	favour, support
fax, facis, f.	torch
fēcī see faciō	
fēlēs, fēlis, f.	cat
* fēmina, fēminae, f.	woman
fenestra, fenestrae, f.	window
* ferō, ferre, tulī	bring, carry
graviter ferre	take badly
* ferōciter	fiercely
* ferōx, gen. ferōcis	fierce, ferocious
ferrum, ferrī, n.	iron
fervēns, gen. ferventis	boiling
* fessus, fessa, fessum	tired
* festinō, festināre, festināvī	hurry
fēstus, fēsta, fēstum	festival, holiday
* fidēlis	faithful, loyal
* filia, filiae, f.	daughter
* filius, filiī, m.	son
firmē	firmly
* flamma, flammae, f.	flame
* flōs, flōris, m.	flower
flūmen, flūminis, n.	river
* fluō, fluere, flūxī	flow
foedus, foeda, foedum	foul, filthy
fōns, fontis, m.	fountain
forceps, forcipis, m.	doctors' tongs, forceps
* fortasse	perhaps
* forte	by chance
* fortis	brave
* fortiter	bravely
fortitūdō, fortitūdīnis, f.	courage
fortūna, fortūnae, f.	fortune, luck
fortūnātus, fortūnāta, fortūnātum	lucky
forum, forī, n.	forum, market-place
fossa, fossae, f.	ditch
frāctus, frācta, frāctum	broken
frangēns, gen. frangentis	breaking
* frāter, frātris, m.	brother
frequentō, frequentāre, frequentāvī	crowd
frūmentum, frūmentī, n.	grain
* frūstrā	in vain
fugiēns, gen. fugientis	running away, fleeing
* fugiō, fugere, fūgī	run away, flee (from)
fūī see sum	
fundō, fundere, fūdī	pour
* fundus, fundī, m.	farm

* fūr, fūris, m.	thief
furēns, gen. furentis	furious, in a rage
fūstis, fūstis, m.	club

g

garriēns, gen. garrientis	chattering, gossiping
garrīō, garrīre, garrīvī	chatter, gossip
garum, garī, n.	sauce
geminī, geminōrum, m.pl.	twins
gemitus, gemitūs, m.	groan
gēns, gentis, f.	family, tribe
Germānicus, Germānica, Germānicum	German
gerō, gerere, gessī	wear
gladiātor, gladiātōris, m.	gladiator
* gladius, gladiī, m.	sword
Graecia, Graeciae, f.	Greece
Graecus, Graeca, Graecum	Greek
grātia, grātiārum, f.pl.	thanks
* grātiās agere	give thanks, thank
gravis	heavy
* graviter	seriously
graviter ferre	take badly
gustō, gustāre, gustāvī	taste

h

* habeō, habēre, habuī	have
* habitō, habitāre, habitāvī	live
hāc	this
hae	these
haec	this
haedus, haedī, m.	kid, young goat
haereō, haerēre, haesī	stick, cling
hanc	this
hās	these
* hasta, hastae, f.	spear
hauriō, haurīre, hausī	drain, drink up
hercle!	by Hercules! good heavens!
* heri	yesterday
heus!	hey!
hī	these
* hic	this
hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī	spend the winter
hiems, hiemis, f.	winter
hippopotamus, hippopotamī, m.	hippopotamus
hoc	this
hōc	this
* hodiē	today
* homō, hominis, m.	human being, man

homunculus, homunculī, m.	little man
honōrō, honōrāre, honōrāvī	honour
hōra, hōrae, f.	hour
horreum, horreī, n.	barn, granary
* hortus, hortī, m.	garden
hōs	these
* hospes, hospitis, m.	guest, host
* hūc	here, to this place
humilis	low-born, of low class
hunc	this

i

iacēns, gen. iacentis	lying
* iaceō, iacēre, iacuī	lie
iactō, iactāre, iactāvī	throw
* iam	now
* iānuā, iānuae, f.	door
ībam see eō	
* ibi	there
id	it
* igitur	therefore, and so
* ignāvus, ignāva, ignāvum	lazy, cowardly
ignōrō, ignōrāre, ignōrāvī	not know about
illa	that, she
illā	that
illae	those
illam	that
illās	those
* ille	that, he
illī	they, those, that
illōs	those
* illūc	there, to that place
illud	that
illum	that
immemor, gen. immemoris	forgetful
immortālis	immortal
immōtus, immōta, immōtum	still, motionless
impavidus, impavida, impavidum	fearless
* impediō, impedire, impedivī	delay, hinder
impellō, impellere, impulī	carry, push, force
* imperātor, imperātōris, m.	emperor
* imperium, imperiī, n.	empire
impetus, impetūs, m.	attack
impiger, impigra, impigrum	lively, energetic
importō, importāre, importāvī	import

impulī see impellō	
* in	in, on; into, onto
incendēns, gen. incendētis	burning, setting on fire
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī	urge on, encourage
incolumis	safe
incurrō, incurrere, incurri	run onto, collide
inēlegāns, gen. inēlegantis	unattractive
infēlix, gen. infēlicis	unlucky
* inferō, inferre, intulī	bring in, bring on
iniūriam inferre	do an injustice to, bring injury to
vim inferre	use force, violence
infestus, infesta, infestum	hostile
infirmus, infirma, infirimum	weak
inflō, inflāre, inflāvī	blow
ingenium, ingenii, n.	character
* ingēns, gen. ingentis	huge
ingravēscō, ingravēscere	grow worse
iniciō, inicere, iniēcī	throw in
inimicus, inimici, m.	enemy
iniūria, iniūriae, f.	injustice, injury
iniūstē	unfairly
innocēns, gen. innocentis	innocent
* inquit	says, said
īnsānus, īnsāna, īnsānum	mad, crazy
īnsiliō, īnsilire, īnsilui	jump onto, jump into
īnsolēns, gen. insolētis	rude, insolent
* īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexī	look at, inspect, examine
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstruxī	draw up
sē īnstruere	draw oneself up
* īnsula, īnsulae, f.	island
* īntelligō, īntelligere, īntellēxī	understand
* īntentē	closely, carefully
* īnter	among, between
īnter sē	among themselves, with each other
īntereā	meanwhile
* īnterficiō, īnterficere, īnterfēcī	kill
īnterpellō, īnterpellāre, īnterpellāvī	interrupt
īnterrogō, īnterrogāre, īnterrogāvī	question
* īnrō, īnrāre, īnrāvī	enter
īntulī see īnferō	
īnūtilis	useless
* īnveniō, īnvenire, īnvēnī	find
* īnvitō, īnvitāre, īnvitāvī	invite
* īnvītus, īnvīta, īnvītum	unwilling, reluctant
iocus, iocī, m.	joke
* ipsa	herself
* ipse	himself
* īrātus, īrāta, īrātum	angry
īre see eō	
īrrumpō, īrrumpere, īrrūpī	burst in
īsiacus, īsiaci, m.	follower of Isis

ista	that
istam	that
* iste	that
istum	that
* ita	in this way
* ita vērō	yes
Italia, Ītalīae, f.	Italy
* itaque	and so
* iter, itineris, n.	journey, progress
* iterum	again
īūdaei, īūdaeōrum, m. pl	Jews
* iūdex, iūdicis, m.	judge
* iuvenis, iuvenis, m.	young man

l

labōrāns, gen. labōrantis	working
* labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī	work
lacrima, lacrimae, f.	tear
lacrimis sē trādere	burst into tears
lacrimāns,	
gen. lacrimantis	weeping, crying
* lacrimō, lacrimāre,	
lacrimāvī	weep, cry
laedō, laedere, laesī	harm
* laetus, laeta, laetum	happy
languidus, languida,	
languidum	weak, feeble
lateō, latēre, latuī	lie hidden
latrō, latrōnis, m.	robber, thug
* laudō, laudāre, laudāvī	praise
lavō, lavāre, lavī	wash
* lectus, lectī, m.	couch, bed
* legō, legere, lēgī	read
lēniter	gently
* lentē	slowly
* leō, leōnis, m.	lion
levis	changeable, inconsistent
libellus, libellī, m.	little book
* libenter	gladly
* liber, librī, m.	book
* liberālis	generous
* liberō, liberāre, liberāvī	free, set free
* libertus, libertī, m.	freedman, ex-slave
libō, libāre, libāvī	pour an offering
liquō, liquāre, liquāvī	melt
* lītus, lītoris, n.	sea-shore, shore
* locus, locī, m.	place
Londinium, Londiniī, n.	London
longē	far, a long way
longius	further
longus, longa, longum	long
loquāx, gen. loquācis	talkative
lūdus, lūdī, m.	game
lūdī fūnebrēs	funeral games
* lūna, lūnae, f.	moon

m

madidus, madida,	
madidum	soaked through
magicus, magica,	
magicum	magic
magis	more
multō magis	much more
magister, magistrī, m.	foreman
magnificus, magnifica,	
magnificum	splendid, magnificent
* magnus, magna, magnum	big, large, great
maior, gen. maiōris	bigger, larger, greater
* māne	in the morning
* maneō, manēre, mānsī	remain, stay
mānsuētus, mānsuēta,	
mānsuētum	tame
* manus, manūs, f.	hand
* mare, maris, n.	sea
* marītus, marītī, m.	husband
marmoreus, marmorea,	
marmoreum	made of marble
* māter, mātris, f.	mother
mātrōna, mātrōnae, f.	lady
maximē	most of all, very much
* maximus, maxima,	
maximum	very big, very large, very great
mē see ego	
medicāmentum,	
medicāmentī, n.	ointment
medicīna, medicīnae, f.	medicine
medicus, medicī, m.	doctor
* medius, media, medium	middle
mel, mellis, n.	honey
* melior	better
melius est	it would be better
mendāciōr,	
gen. mendāciōris	more deceitful
* mendāx, mendācis, m.	liar
mēnsa, mēnsae, f.	table
mēnsis, mēnsis, m.	month
* mercātor, mercātōris, m.	merchant
mēta, mētae, f.	turning-point
metallum, metallī, n.	a mine
* meus, mea, meum	my, mine
mī dulcissime!	my dear fellow!
mī Salvī!	my dear Salvius!
mihi see ego	
* mīles, mīlitis, m.	soldier
mīlitō, mīlitāre, mīlitāvī	be a soldier
* minimē!	no!
* mīrābilis	extraordinary, strange
mīrāculum, mīrāculī, n.	miracle
* miser, misera, miserum	miserable, wretched, sad
o mē miserum!	oh wretched me! oh dear!
* mittō, mittere, mīsī	send
modicus, modica,	
modicum	ordinary, little

molestus, molesta, molestum	troublesome
moneō, monēre, monuī	warn, advise
* mōns, montis, m.	mountain
monumentum, monumentī, n.	monument
moritūrus, moritūra, moritūrum	going to die
* mors, mortis, f.	death
* mortuus, mortua, mortuum	dead
moveō, movēre, mōvī	move
* mox	soon
mulceō, mulcēre, mulsi	stroke
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.	crowd
* multus, multa, multum	much
* multī	many
multō magis	much more
* mūrus, mūrī, m.	wall
mūs, mūris, m. f.	mouse
mystēria, mystēriōrum, n.pl.	mysteries, secret worship

n

* nam	for
* nārrō, nārrāre, nārrāvī	tell, relate
natō, natāre, natāvī	swim
nātūra, nātūrae, f.	nature
naufragium, naufragiī, n.	shipwreck
naufragus, naufragī, m.	shipwrecked sailor
* nauta, nautae, m.	sailor
* nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī	sail
* nāvis, nāvis, f.	ship
Neāpolis, Neāpolis, f.	Naples
* necesse	necessary
* necō, necāre, necāvī	kill
nefāstus, nefāsta, nefāstum	dreadful
neglegēns, gen. neglegentis	careless
* negōtium, negōtiī, n.	business
* nēmō	no one, nobody
neque... neque	neither... nor
niger, nigra, nigrum	black
* nihil	nothing
nihil cūrō	I don't care
Nīlus, Nīlī, m.	the river Nile
nitidus, nitida, nitidum	gleaming, brilliant
niveus, nivea, niveum	snow-white
nōbilis	noble, of noble birth
nōbīs see nōs	
nocēns, gen. nocentis	guilty
noceō, nocēre, nocuī	hurt

noctū	by night
* nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	not want
nōlī	do not, don't
nōmen, nōminis, n.	name
* nōn	not
* nōnne?	surely?
nōnnūllī, nōnnūllae	some, several
* nōs	we, us
nōbīscum	with us
* noster, nostra, nostrum	our
nōtus, nōta, nōtum	well-known, famous
* novem	nine
* nōvī	I know
* novus, nova, novum	new
* nūllus, nūlla, nūllum	not any, no
* num?	surely not?
numerō, numerāre, numerāvī	count
numerus, numeri, m.	number
* numquam	never
* nunc	now
* nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī	announce
* nūntius, nūntiī, m.	messenger, news
nūper	recently
nūptiae, nūptiārum, f.pl.	wedding

o

obdormiō, obdormīre, obdormīvī	go to sleep
obeō, obīre, obiī	meet
obruō, obruere, obruī	overwhelm
obstinātus, obstināta, obstinātum	obstinate, stubborn
* obstō, obstāre, obstiti	obstruct, block the way
obtulī see offerō	
occupātus, occupāta, occupātum	busy
* octō	eight
* oculus, oculī, m.	eye
offendō, offendere, offendī	displease
* offerō, offerre, obtulī	offer
officīna, officīnae, f.	workshop
* ōlim	once, some time ago
* omnis	all
opportūnē	just at the right time
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī	attack
* optimē	very well
* optimus, optima, optimum	very good, excellent, best
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.	row, line
ōrnāmentum, ōrnāmentī, n.	ornament
ōrnātrīx, ōrnātrīcis, f.	hairdresser
ōrnātus, ōrnāta, ōrnātum	decorated, elaborately furnished

ōrnō, ōrnāre, ōrnāvī	decorate
ōsculum, ōsculī, n.	kiss
* ostendō, ostendere, ostendī	show
ostrea, ostreae, f.	oyster
ōtiōsus, ōtiōsa, ōtiōsum	idle, on holiday, on vacation
ōvum, ōvī, n.	egg

P

* paene	nearly, almost		
palaestra, palaestrae, f.	palaestra, exercise area		
palūs, palūdis, f.	marsh, swamp		
parātus, parāta, parātum	ready, prepared		
parēns, parentis, m. f.	parent		
pāreō, pārere, pārui	obey		
* parō, parāre, parāvī	prepare		
* pars, partis, f.	part		
in primā parte	in the forefront		
* parvus, parva, parvum	small, little		
* pater, patris, m.	father		
patera, paterae, f.	bowl		
* paucī, paucae	few, a few		
paulātim	gradually		
paulum, paulī, n.	little, a little		
pavimentum, pavimentī, n.	floor		
* pāx, pācis, f.	peace		
* pecūnia, pecūniae, f.	money		
* per	through, along		
percutiō, percutere, percussī	strike		
* pereō, perire, perī	die, perish		
periculōsus, periculōsa, periculōsum	dangerous		
* periculum, periculī, n.	danger		
perītē	skilfully		
perītia, perītiae, f.	skill		
perītus, perīta, perītum	skilful		
* persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī	persuade		
* perterritus, perterrita, perterritum	terrified		
* perveniō, pervenire, pervēnī	reach, arrive at		
* pēs, pedis, m.	foot, paw		
* pessimus, pessima, pessimum	worst, very bad		
pestis, pestis, f.	pest, scoundrel		
* petō, petere, petivī	make for, attack; seek, beg for, ask for		
pharus, pharī, m.	lighthouse		
philosophus, philosophī, m.	philosopher		
pictor, pictōris, m.	painter, artist		
pictūra, pictūrae, f.	painting, picture		
pila, pilae, f.	ball		
pingō, pingere, pīnxī	paint		
pius, pia, pium	respectful to the gods		
* placeō, placere, placuī	please, suit		
placidus, placida, placidum	calm, peaceful		
plānē	clearly		
* plaudō, plaudere, plausī	applaud, clap		
plaustrum, plaustrī, n.	wagon, cart		
plēnus, plēna, plēnum	full		
pluit, pluere, pluit	rain		
* plūrimus, plūrima, plūrimum	most, very much		
* plūrimī, plūrimae	very many		
plūs, gen. plūris	more		
poena, poenae, f.	punishment		
poenās dare	pay the penalty, be punished		
* poēta, poētae, m.	poet		
pompa, pompae, f.	procession		
Pompēianus, Pompēiana, Pompēianum	Pompeian		
* pōnō, pōnere, posuī	place, put, put up		
* porta, portae, f.	gate		
portāns, gen. portantis	carrying		
* portō, portāre, portāvī	carry		
* portus, portūs, m.	harbour		
* poscō, poscere, poposci	demand, ask for		
possideō, possidere, possēdī	possess		
* possum, posse, potuī	can, be able		
* post	after, behind		
* postea	afterwards		
* postquam	after, when		
postrēmō	finally, lastly		
* postrīdiē	on the next day		
* postulō, postulare, postulāvī	demand		
posuī see pōnō			
potuī see possum			
praeceps, gen. praecipitis	headlong		
praecursor,			
praecursōris, m.	forerunner		
praedium, praediī, n.	estate		
praemium, praemiī, n.	prize, reward, profit		
praesidium, praesidiī, n.	protection		
praesum, praesesse, praefuī	be in charge of		
praetereō, praeterire, praeterī	go past		
prāvus, prāva, prāvum	evil		
precēs, precum, f.pl.	prayers		
premō, premere, pressi	push		
pretiōsus, pretiōsa, pretiōsum	expensive, precious		
pretium, pretiī, n.	price		
primō	first		
* primus, prima, primum	first		
in primā parte	in the forefront		
* princeps, principis, m.	chief, chieftain		
prior	first, in front		

* <i>prō</i>	<i>in front of</i>
<i>prō dī immortalēs!</i>	<i>heavens above!</i>
<i>probus, proba, probum</i>	<i>honest</i>
* <i>prōcēdō, prōcēdere,</i>	
<i>prōcessī</i>	<i>advance, proceed</i>
<i>procul</i>	<i>far off</i>
<i>prōcumbō, prōcumbere,</i>	
<i>prōcubū</i>	<i>fall, fall down</i>
* <i>prōmittō, prōmittere,</i>	
<i>prōmīsī</i>	<i>promise</i>
* <i>prope</i>	<i>near</i>
<i>prōvideō, prōvidēre,</i>	
<i>prōvidī</i>	<i>foresee</i>
<i>proximus, proxima,</i>	
<i>proximum</i>	<i>nearest</i>
<i>psittacus, psittacī, m.</i>	<i>parrot</i>
* <i>puella, puellae, f.</i>	<i>girl</i>
* <i>puer, puerī, m.</i>	<i>boy</i>
<i>pugiō, pugiōnis, m.</i>	<i>dagger</i>
* <i>pugna, pugnae, f.</i>	<i>fight</i>
* <i>pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī</i>	<i>fight</i>
* <i>pulcher, pulchra,</i>	
<i>pulchrum</i>	<i>beautiful</i>
* <i>pulsō, pulsāre, pulsāvī</i>	<i>hit, knock at, punch</i>
<i>pūmiliō, pūmiliōnis, m.</i>	<i>dwarf</i>
* <i>pūniō, pūnīre, pūnīvī</i>	<i>punish</i>
<i>pūrus, pūra, pūrum</i>	<i>clean, spotless</i>
<i>puto, putāre, putāvī</i>	<i>think</i>

q

<i>quā</i>	<i>from whom</i>
* <i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>forty</i>
<i>quae</i>	<i>who, which</i>
<i>quaerēs, gen. quaerentis</i>	<i>searching for, looking for</i>
* <i>quaerō, quaerere,</i>	
<i>quaesivī</i>	<i>search for, look for</i>
* <i>quam</i>	<i>(1) how</i>
<i>quam celerrimē</i>	<i>as quickly as possible</i>
* <i>quam</i>	<i>(2) than</i>
<i>quam</i>	<i>(3) whom, which</i>
* <i>quamquam</i>	<i>although</i>
<i>quārtus, quārta, quārtum</i>	<i>fourth</i>
<i>quās</i>	<i>whom, which</i>
* <i>quattuor</i>	<i>four</i>
* <i>-que</i>	<i>and</i>
<i>quem</i>	<i>whom, which</i>
* <i>quī</i>	<i>who, which</i>
<i>quid?</i>	<i>what?</i>
<i>quid agis?</i>	<i>how are you?</i>
<i>quid vīs?</i>	<i>what do you want?</i>
<i>quīdam</i>	<i>a certain</i>
<i>quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī</i>	<i>rest</i>
<i>quiētus, quiēta, quiētum</i>	<i>quiet</i>
* <i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>fifty</i>
* <i>quīnque</i>	<i>five</i>

* <i>quis?</i>	<i>who?</i>
* <i>quō?</i>	<i>(1) where? where to?</i>
<i>quō</i>	<i>(2) from whom</i>
<i>quō modō?</i>	<i>how?</i>
* <i>quod</i>	<i>(1) because</i>
<i>quod</i>	<i>(2) which</i>
* <i>quondam</i>	<i>one day, once</i>
* <i>quoque</i>	<i>also, too</i>
<i>quōs</i>	<i>whom, which</i>
<i>quotannīs</i>	<i>every year</i>

r

<i>rādō, rādere, rāsī</i>	<i>scratch</i>
<i>rapiō, rapere, rapuī</i>	<i>seize, grab</i>
<i>rārō</i>	<i>rarely</i>
<i>raucus, rauca, raucum</i>	<i>harsh</i>
<i>recidō, recidere, recidī</i>	<i>fall back</i>
* <i>recipiō, recipere, recēpī</i>	<i>recover, take back</i>
<i>sē recipere</i>	<i>recover</i>
<i>recitāns, gen. recitantis</i>	<i>reciting</i>
<i>recitō, recitāre, recitāvī</i>	<i>recite</i>
<i>rēctā</i>	<i>directly, straight</i>
<i>rēctus, rēcta, rēctum</i>	<i>straight</i>
<i>recumbēns,</i>	
<i>gen. recumbentis</i>	<i>lying down, reclining</i>
<i>recumbō, recumbere,</i>	
<i>recubī</i>	<i>lie down, recline</i>
* <i>recūsō, recūsāre, recūsāvī</i>	<i>refuse</i>
* <i>reddō, reddere, reddidī</i>	<i>give back</i>
* <i>redeō, redire, rediī</i>	<i>return, go back, come back</i>
<i>referō, referre, rettulī</i>	<i>carry, deliver</i>
<i>reficiō, reficere, refēcī</i>	<i>repair</i>
<i>rēgīna, rēgīnae, f.</i>	<i>queen</i>
* <i>relinquō, relinquere,</i>	
<i>reliquī</i>	<i>leave</i>
<i>remedium, remediī, n.</i>	<i>cure</i>
<i>renovō, renovāre,</i>	
<i>renovāvī</i>	<i>restore</i>
* <i>rēs, rei, f.</i>	<i>thing</i>
<i>rem cōficere</i>	<i>finish the job</i>
<i>rem intellegere</i>	<i>understand the truth</i>
<i>rem nārāre</i>	<i>tell the story</i>
<i>rēs rūstica</i>	<i>farming</i>
* <i>resistō, resistere, restitī</i>	<i>resist</i>
* <i>respondeō, respondēre,</i>	
<i>respondī</i>	<i>reply</i>
<i>respōnsum, respōnsī, n.</i>	<i>answer</i>
<i>retineō, retinēre, retinū</i>	<i>keep, hold back</i>
<i>retrahō, retrahere, retrāxī</i>	<i>drag back</i>
* <i>reveniō, revenīre, revēnī</i>	<i>come back, return</i>
* <i>rēx, rēgis, m.</i>	<i>king</i>
<i>rīdēns, gen. rīdentis</i>	<i>laughing, smiling</i>
* <i>rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī</i>	<i>laugh, smile</i>
<i>rīpa, rīpae, f.</i>	<i>river bank</i>
* <i>rogō, rogāre, rogāvī</i>	<i>ask</i>

rogus, rogī, m.	pyre
Rōmānus, Rōmāna,	
Rōmānum	Roman
rosa, rosae, f.	rose
rota, rotae, f.	wheel
* ruō, ruere, ruī	rush
rūsticus, rūstica, rūsticum	country, in the country
rēs rūstica	farming
villa rūstica	house in the country

S

sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred
* sacerdos, sacerdotis, m.	priest
sacrificium, sacrificiī, n.	offering, sacrifice
sacrificō, sacrificāre,	
sacrificāvī	sacrifice
* saepe	often
saeviō, saevire, saeviī	be in a rage
saevus, saeva, saevum	savage
saltātrix, saltātrīcis, f.	dancing-girl
saltō, saltāre, saltāvī	dance
* salūtō, salūtāre, salūtāvī	greet
* salvē!	hello!
sānē	obviously
* sanguis, sanguinis, m.	blood
sānō, sānāre, sānāvī	heal, cure
sapiēns, gen. sapientis	wise
* satis	enough
saxum, saxī, n.	rock
scapha, scaphae, f.	punt, small boat
scelestus, scelesta,	
scelestum	wicked
scēptrum, scēptrī, n.	sceptre
scindō, scindere, scidi	tear up
scio, scīre, scīvī	know
scōpae, scōpārum, f. pl.	broom
scopulus, scopulī, m.	reef
* scribō, scribere, scripsi	write
scriptor, scriptōris, m.	writer, sign-writer
scurrilis	rude
* sē	himself, herself, themselves
sēcum	with him, with her, with them
secō, secāre, secuī	cut
secundus, secunda,	
secundum	second
sēcūrus, sēcūra, sēcūrum	without a care
* sed	but
sedēns, gen. sedentis	sitting
* sedeō, sedēre, sēdī	sit
seges, segetis, f.	crop, harvest
sella, sellae, f.	chair
sēmirus, sēmirus,	
sēmirutum	half-collapsed
* semper	always
* senātor, senātōris, m.	senator
* senex, senis, m.	old man

* sententia, sententiae, f.	opinion
* sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī	feel, notice
* septem	seven
sermō, sermōnis, m.	conversation
* servō, servāre, servāvī	save, look after, preserve
* servus, servī, m.	slave
* sex	six
sibi	to him, to her, to them
* sicut	like
* signum, signī, n.	sign, seal, signal
silentium, silentiī, n.	silence
* silva, silvae, f.	wood
* simulac, simulatque	as soon as
sine	without
situs, sitūs, m.	position, site
sōl, sōlis, m.	sun
* soleō, solēre	be accustomed
sollemniter	solemnly
sollicitūdō,	
sollicitūdinis, f.	anxiety
* sollicitus, sollicita,	
sollicitum	worried, anxious
* sōlus, sōla, sōlum	alone, lonely, only, on one's own
somnium, somniī, n.	dream
sonitus, sonitūs, m.	sound
sonō, sonāre, sonuī	sound
sonus, sonī, m.	sound, noise
sordidus, sordida,	
sordidum	dirty
spargō, spargere, sparsi	scatter
* spectāculum,	
spectaculī, n.	show, spectacle
spectātor, spectātōris, m.	spectator
* spectō, spectāre, spectāvī	look at, watch
splendidus, splendida,	
splendidum	splendid
spongia, spongiae, f.	sponge
stāns, gen. stantis	standing
* statim	at once
statua, statuae, f.	statue
stilus, stilī, m.	pen, stick
* stō, stāre, steti	stand
stola, stolae, f.	dress
studeō, studēre, studuī	study
* stultus, stulta, stultum	stupid
suāvis	sweet
suāviter	sweetly
sub	under
* subitō	suddenly
sūdō, sūdāre, sūdāvī	sweat
sufficiō, sufficere, sufficī	be enough
* sum, esse, fuī	be
summergō, sommergere,	
summersī	sink, dip
summersus, summersa,	
summersum	sunk
* summus, summa,	
summum	highest, greatest, top
superbus, superba,	
superbum	arrogant, proud

* superō, superāre, superāvī	overcome, overpower
supersum, superesse, superfui	survive
supplicium, supplicii, n.	death penalty
surdus, surda, surdum	deaf
* surgō, surgere, surrēxi suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī	get up, rise
sustulī <i>see</i> tollō	undertake, take on
susurrāns, <i>gen.</i> susurrantis	whispering, muttering
susurrō, susurrāre, susurrāvī	whisper, mutter
* suus, sua, suum	his, her, their, their own
Syrī, Syrōrum, m.pl	Syrians
Syrius, Syria, Syrium	Syrian

t

* taberna, tabernae, f.	shop, inn
tabernārius, tabernārii, m.	shopkeeper
tablinum, tablini, n.	study
* taceō, tacēre, tacuī	be silent, be quiet
* tacitē	quietly, silently
tacitus, tacita, tacitum	quiet, silent, in silence
* tam	so
* tamen	however
* tandem	at last
tangō, tangere, tetigī	touch
tantus, tanta, tantum	so great, such a great
tardus, tarda, tardum	late
taurus, tauri, m.	bull
tē <i>see</i> tū	
tempestās, tempestātis, f.	storm
* templum, templi, n.	temple
* temptō, temptāre, temptāvī	try
tenēns, <i>gen.</i> tenentis	holding
* teneō, tenēre, tenuī	hold
tergeō, tergēre, tersī	wipe
* terra, terrae, f.	ground, land
* terreō, terrēre, terruī	frighten
terribilis	terrible
theātrum, theātri, n.	theatre
tibi <i>see</i> tū	
tībicen, tībicinis, m.	pipe player
* timeō, timēre, timuī	be afraid, fear
timidus, timida, timidum	fearful, frightened
toga, togae, f.	toga
tollēns, <i>gen.</i> tollentis	raising, lifting up
* tollō, tollere, sustulī	raise, lift up, hold up
* tot	so many
* tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole
tractō, tractāre, tractāvī	handle
* trādō, trādere, trādidī	hand over

lacrimis sē trādere	burst into tears
tragoedia, tragoediae, f.	tragedy
* trahō, trahere, trāxi	drag
tranquillitās, tranquillitātis, f.	calmness
trānsfigō, trānsfigere, trānsfixī	pierce
* trēs	three
triclinium, triclinii, n.	dining-room
* trīgintā	thirty
tripodes, tripodum, m.pl.	tripods
trīstis	sad
trūdō, trūdere, trūsī	push, shove
* tū, tuī	you (singular)
tēcum	with you (singular)
tuba, tubae, f.	trumpet
tubicen, tubicinis, m.	trumpeter
tulī <i>see</i> ferō	
* tum	then
tumultus, tumultus, m.	riot
tunica, tunicae, f.	tunic
* turba, turbae, f.	crowd
turbulentus, turbulenta, turbulentum	rowdy, disorderly
tūtus, tūta, tūtum	safe
tūtius est	it would be safer
* tuus, tua, tuum	your, yours

u

* ubi	where, when
ultor, ultōris, m.	avenger
umerus, umeri, m.	shoulder
* unda, undae, f.	wave
unde	from where
unguō, unguere, ūnxī	anoint, smear
* ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one
urbānus, urbāna, urbānum	smart, fashionable
* urbs, urbis, f.	city
urna, urnae, f.	bucket, jar, jug
ursa, ursae, f.	bear
ut	as
* uxor, uxōris, f.	wife

v

* valdē	very much, very
* valē	goodbye
valvae, valvārum, f.pl.	doors
varius, varia, varium	different
* vehementer	violently, loudly

vehō, vehere, vēxī	carry	* vīnum, vīnī, n.	wine
vēnātiō, vēnātiōnis, f.	hunt	* vir, virī, m.	man
* vēndō, vēndere, vēndidī	sell	virga, virgae, f.	rod, stick
venia, veniae, f.	mercy	vīs, f.	force, violence
* veniō, venīre, venī	come	vīs see volō	
vēr, vēris, n.	spring	vīsītō, vīsītāre, vīsītāvī	visit
* verberō, verberāre, verberāvī	strike, beat	* vīta, vītae, f.	life
verrō, verrere	sweep	vītō, vītāre, vītāvī	avoid
versus, versūs, m.	verse, line of poetry	vitreārius, vitreāriī, m.	glassmaker
versus magicus	magic spell	vitreus, vitrea, vitreum	glass, made of glass
* vertō, vertere, vertī	turn	vitrum, vitrī, n.	glass
sē vertere	turn round	* vituperō, vituperāre, vituperāvī	blame, curse
vērus, vēra, vērum	true, real	* vīvō, vīvere, vīxī	live, be alive
* vexō, vexāre, vexāvī	annoy	* vix	hardly, scarcely, with difficulty
* via, viae, f.	street	vōbīs see vōs	
vibrō, vibrāre, vibrāvī	wave, brandish	* vocō, vocāre, vocāvī	call
vīcī see vincō		* volō, velle, voluī	want
vīcīnus, vīcīna, vīcīnum	neighbouring, nearby	quid vīs?	what do you want?
victima, victimae, f.	victim	* vōs	you (plural)
victor, victōris, m.	victor, winner	* vōx, vōcis, f.	voice
* videō, vidēre, vīdī	see	vulnerātus, vulnerāta, vulnerātum	wounded, injured
* vīgintī	twenty	* vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī	wound, injure
vīlicus, vīlicī, m.	farm manager, bailiff	* vulnus, vulneris, n.	wound
vīlis	cheap	vult see volō	
villa, villae, f.	house, villa		
* vincō, vincere, vīcī	win, be victorious		
vindex, vindicis, m.	champion, defender		
vindicō, vindicāre, vindicāvī	avenge		



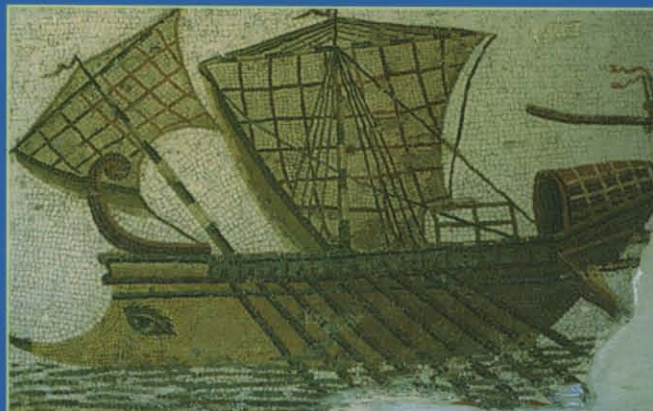
CAMBRIDGE LATIN COURSE

The *Cambridge Latin Course* is a well-established and successful Latin programme developed by the Cambridge School Classics Project. It provides an enjoyable and carefully paced introduction to the Latin language, complemented by background information on Roman culture and civilisation. The material progresses from simple stories written specially for the Course, through adaptations of Roman authors, to original texts. The texts are accompanied by explanations of key language points, and are supported by grammar practice exercises.

Book II focuses first on life in Roman Britain before moving further afield to Egypt. Other titles in the course take the reader to Pompeii and imperial Rome.

Key features of the Fourth Edition include:

- a wide range of colour photographs, many specially commissioned
- updated sections on background and culture, taking account of recent research
- revised presentation of grammatical features
- revised and expanded questions accompanying comprehension pages.



CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

ISBN 0-521-64468-2



9 780521 644686

£11.00